TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE	
1	INTRODUCTION	3	1
2	THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE	9	2
3	UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE	77	3
4	UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL	167	4
5	STARTING AND OPERATING	247	5
6	WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES	377	6
7	MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE	397	7
8	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES	479	8
9	IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE	499	9
10	INDEX	509	10

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

CONTENTS

- Introduction 4
- A Message From DaimlerChrysler Corporation – Diesel Engines Only 4
- How To Use This Manual 5
- Warnings And Cautions 7
- Van Conversions / Campers 7
- Vehicle Identification Number 8
- Vehicle Modifications / Alterations 8

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INTRODUCTION

This manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty Information Booklet and various customer oriented documents. You are urged to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

NOTE: After you read the manual, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient reference and remain with the vehicle when sold, so that the new owner will be aware of all safety warnings.

When it comes to service, remember that your dealer knows your vehicle best, has the factory-trained technicians and genuine Mopar® parts, and is interested in your satisfaction.

A MESSAGE FROM DAIMLERCHRYSLER CORPORATION – DIESEL ENGINES ONLY

DaimlerChrysler Corporation and Cummins welcome you as a new Dodge Ram Cummins Turbo Diesel-powered truck owner.

Almost 100% of the heavy duty trucks in the United States and Canada are diesel powered because of the fuel economy, rugged durability, and high torque which permits pulling heavy loads. Cummins engines power well over half of these trucks. Now this same technology and proven performance is yours in your new Dodge Ram truck equipped with the Cummins 6.7 liter, Turbocharged, Charge Air Cooled, Diesel engine.

Your diesel truck will sound, feel, drive, and operate differently from a gasoline-powered truck. It is important that you read and understand this manual. You may find that some of the starting, operating, and maintenance procedures are different. However, they are simple to

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

follow and careful adherence to them will ensure that you take full advantage of the features of this engine.

Thank you for choosing the Dodge Ram truck with Cummins Turbo Diesel power.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the table of contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

The detailed index, at the rear of this manual, contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Consult the following table for a description of the symbols that may be used on your vehicle or throughout this owner's manual:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

81b8d09e

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures which could result in an accident or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures which could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire manual you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS

The Manufacturer's Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper manufacturers/ body builders. See the Warranty information book, Section 2.1.C. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

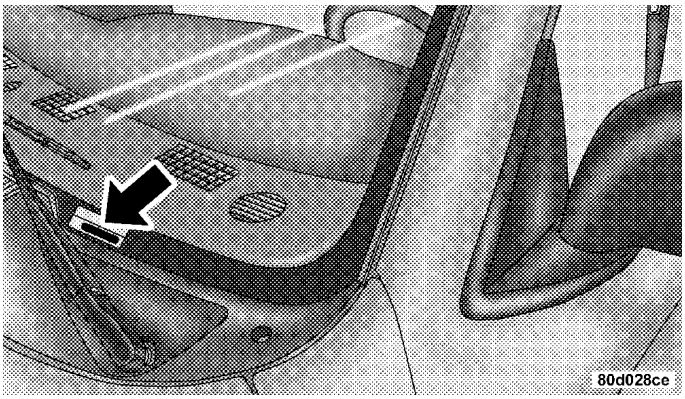
Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your selling dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builders Guide go to: www.dodgebodybuilder.com. This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for Dodge trucks. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your Dodge dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is found on the left front corner of the instrument panel, visible through the windshield. This number also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle, the vehicle registration and title.



Vehicle Identification Number

NOTE: It is illegal to remove the VIN.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS/ALTERATIONS

WARNING!

Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- ■ A Word About Your Keys 12
  - □ Ignition Key Removal 12
  - □ Locking Doors With The Key 14
- ■ Sentry Key 15
  - □ Replacement Keys 16
  - □ Customer Key Programming 17
  - □ General Information 18
- ■ Steering Wheel Lock — If Equipped 18
  - □ If You Wish To Manually Lock The Steering Wheel 18
  - □ To Release The Steering Wheel Lock 18
  - □ Automatic Transmission Ignition Interlock System 19
- ■ Security Alarm System — If Equipped 19
  - □ Rearming Of The System 19
  - □ To Set The Alarm 19
  - □ To Disarm The System 20
- ■ Illuminated Entry System — If Equipped 20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

■ Remote Keyless Entry — If Equipped 21
□ To Unlock The Doors 21
□ To Lock The Doors 22
□ Using The Panic Alarm 24
□ General Information 24
□ Transmitter Battery Service 25
■ Remote Starting System — If Equipped 26
■ Door Locks 27
□ Manual Door Locks — If Equipped 27
□ Power Door Locks — If Equipped 28
□ Child Protection Door Lock 31
■ Windows 32
□ Power Windows – If Equipped 32
□ Power Sliding Rear Window – If Equipped 34
□ Sliding Rear Window – If Equipped 34
□ Wind Buffeting 34
■ Occupant Restraints 35
□ Lap/Shoulder Belts 35
□ Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage 43
□ Automatic Locking Restraint (ALR) Mode – If Equipped 43
□ Center Lap Belts 44
□ Seat Belt Pretensioners 45
□ Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert) 45
□ Seat Belts And Pregnant Women 47
□ Seat Belt Extender 47

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbag 47
- □ Event Data Recorder (EDR) 57
- □ Child Restraint 59

■ New Engine Break-In 71

- □ 5.7L Gas Engine 71
- □ 6.7L Diesel Engine 72

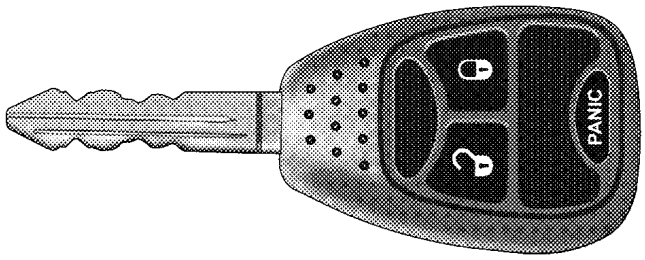
■ Safety Tips 73

- □ Transporting Passengers 73
- □ Lock Your Vehicle 74
- □ Exhaust Gas 74
- □ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle 75
- □ Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle 75

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

The dealer that sold you your new vehicle has the key code numbers for your vehicle locks. These numbers can be used to order duplicate keys from your dealer. Ask your dealer for these numbers and keep them in a safe place.

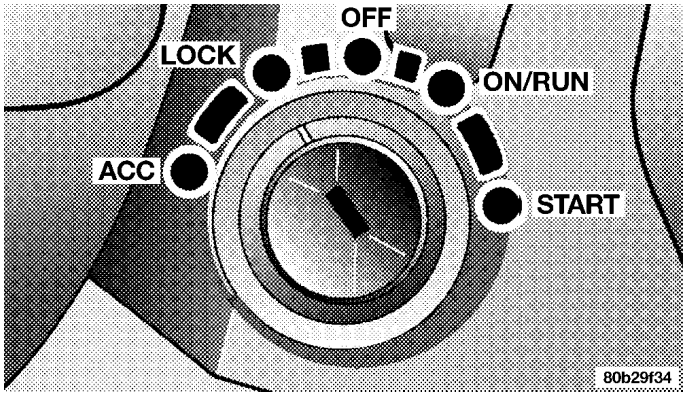


Ignition Key

Ignition Key Removal

Automatic Transmission — If Equipped

Place the shift lever in PARK. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK position, and remove the key.



Ignition Switch Positions

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If you try to remove the key before you place the lever in PARK, the key may become trapped temporarily in the ignition cylinder. If this occurs, rotate the key to the right slightly, then remove the key as described. If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key in the ignition cylinder to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key cannot be removed until you obtain service.

NOTE: For vehicles not equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), the power window switches, radio, hands–free system (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off. Opening either front door will cancel this feature.

For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), the power window switches, radio, hands–free system (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off. Opening either front door will cancel this feature. The time for this feature is programmable. For details, refer to "KEY OFF POWER DELAY > OFF" under "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)," under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual.

WARNING!

Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the keys in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

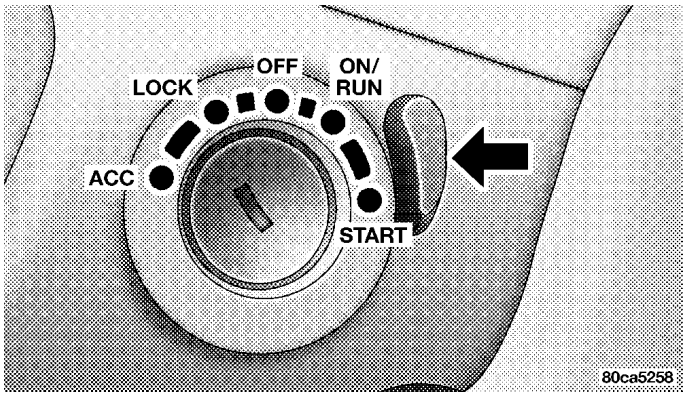
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

An unlocked car is an invitation to thieves. Always remove key from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Manual Transmission — If Equipped

When the steering wheel is in the LOCK position, the steering and ignition systems are locked to provide antitheft protection for your vehicle. It may be difficult to turn the key from the LOCK position when starting your vehicle. Move the steering wheel left and right while turning the key until it turns easily. To remove the key, depress and hold the release button located between the ignition switch and the instrument panel. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.



Ignition Key Release Button

Locking Doors With The Key

You can insert the key with either side up. To lock the door, turn the key rearward, to unlock the door, turn the key forward. See Section 7 of this manual for door lock lubrication.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SENTRY KEY

The Sentry Key Immobilizer System prevents unauthorized vehicle operation by disabling the engine. The system does not need to be armed or activated. Operation is automatic, regardless of whether the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

The system uses ignition keys, which have an embedded electronic chip (transponder), to prevent unauthorized vehicle operation. Therefore, only keys that are programmed to the vehicle can be used to start and operate the vehicle. The system will shut the engine off in two (2) seconds if someone uses an invalid key to start the engine.

NOTE: A key, which has not been programmed, is also considered an invalid key even if it is cut to fit the ignition switch lock cylinder for that vehicle.

During normal operation, after turning on the ignition switch, the Vehicle Security Alarm Indicator Light will turn on for three (3) seconds for a bulb check. If the light remains on after the bulb check, it indicates that there is a problem with the electronics. In addition, if the light begins to flash after the bulb check, it indicates that someone used an invalid key to start the engine. Either of these conditions will result in the engine being shut off after two (2) seconds.

If the Vehicle Security Alarm Indicator Light turns on during normal vehicle operation (vehicle running for longer than 10 seconds), it indicates that there is a fault in the electronics. Should this occur, have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

NOTE:

- The Sentry Key Immobilizer System is not compatible with some after-market remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and loss of security protection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Exxon / Mobil Speed Pass,™ additional Sentry Keys, or any other transponder-equipped components on the same key chain will **not** cause a key-related (transponder) fault unless the additional part is **physically held against the ignition key** being used when starting the vehicle. Cell phones, pagers, or other RF electronics will not cause interference with this system.

All of the keys provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

Replacement Keys

NOTE: Only keys that are programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start and operate the vehicle. Once a Sentry Key is programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

CAUTION!

Always remove Sentry Keys from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

At the time of purchase, the original owner is provided with a four-digit PIN number. Keep the PIN in a secure location. This number is required for dealer replacement of keys. Duplication of keys may be performed at an authorized dealer or by using the Customer Key Programming procedure. This procedure consists of programming a blank key to the vehicle electronics. A blank key is one, which has never been programmed.

NOTE: When having the Sentry Key Immobilizer System serviced, bring all vehicle keys with you to the dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Key Programming

If you have two valid sentry keys, you can program new sentry keys to the system by performing the following procedure:

1. Cut the additional Sentry Key Transponder blank(s) to match the ignition switch lock cylinder key code.

2. Insert the first valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position for at least 3 seconds, but no longer than 15-seconds. Then, turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and remove the first key.

3. Insert the second valid key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position within 15 seconds. After ten seconds, a chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Alarm Indicator Light will begin to flash. Turn the ignition switch to the "LOCK" position and remove the second key.

4. Insert a blank Sentry Key into the ignition switch. Turn the ignition switch to the "ON" position within 60 seconds. After 10 seconds, a single chime will sound. In addition, the Vehicle Security Alarm Indicator Light will stop flashing. To indicate that programming is complete, the indicator light will turn on again for 3 seconds and then turn off.

The new Sentry Key is programmed. **The Keyless Entry Transmitter will also be programmed during this procedure.**

Repeat this procedure to program up to 8 keys. If you do not have a programmed sentry key, contact your dealer for details.

NOTE: If a programmed key is lost, see your dealer to have all remaining keys erased from the systems memory. This will prevent the lost key from starting your vehicle. The remaining keys must then be reprogrammed. All vehicle keys must be taken to the dealer at the time of service to be reprogrammed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

General Information

The Sentry Key system complies with FCC rules part 15 and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

STEERING WHEEL LOCK — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with a passive steering wheel lock. This lock prevents steering the vehicle without the ignition key. If the steering wheel is moved no more than 1/2 turn in either direction and the key is not in the ignition switch, the steering wheel will lock.

If You Wish To Manually Lock The Steering Wheel:

With the engine running, turn the steering wheel upside down, turn off the engine and remove the key. Turn the steering wheel slightly in either direction until the lock engages.

To Release The Steering Wheel Lock:

Insert the key in the ignition switch and start the engine. If the key is difficult to turn, move the wheel slightly to the right or left to disengage the lock.

NOTE: If you turned the wheel to the right to engage the lock, you must turn the wheel slightly to the right to disengage it. If you turned the wheel to the left to engage the lock, turn the wheel slightly to the left to disengage it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Ignition Interlock System

This system prevents the key from being removed unless the shift lever is in PARK. It also prevents shifting out of PARK unless the key is in the ON positions, and the brake pedal is depressed.

SECURITY ALARM SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the alarm is activated, the system provides both audible and visual signals. For the first 3 minutes the horn will sound and the headlights and security telltale will flash repeatedly. For an additional 15 minutes only the headlights and security telltale will flash. The engine will run only if a valid Sentry Key is used to start the vehicle. Use of the Sentry Key will disable the alarm.

Rearming of the System:

The security system will rearm itself after the 15 additional minutes of headlights and security telltale flashing, if the system has not been disabled. If the condition which initiated the alarm is still present, the system will ignore that condition and monitor the remaining doors and ignition.

To Set the Alarm:

The alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the Keyless Entry transmitter to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed the SECURITY light in the instrument cluster will flash rapidly to signal that the system is arming. The security light in the instrument panel cluster will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the security light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If the SECURITY light stays on continuously during vehicle operation, have the system checked by your dealer.

To Disarm the System:

Use the Keyless Entry transmitter to unlock the door. If something has triggered the system in your absence, the horn will sound three times when you unlock the doors and the security lamp will flash for 30 seconds. Check the vehicle for tampering.

The Security system will also disarm, if the vehicle is started with a programmed Sentry Key. If an unprogrammed Sentry Key is used to start a vehicle, the engine will run for 2 seconds and then the security alarm will be initiated. To exit alarming mode, press the transmitter Unlock button, or start the vehicle with a programmed Sentry Key.

The Security Alarm System is designed to protect your vehicle; however, you can create conditions where the system will arm unexpectedly. If you remain in the vehicle and lock the doors with the transmitter, the alarm will sound when you pull the door handle to exit. The door will be locked but the Security Alarm will not arm.

ILLUMINATED ENTRY SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

The courtesy lights will turn on when you use the keyless entry transmitter or open the doors. This feature is only available if you have Remote Keyless Entry.

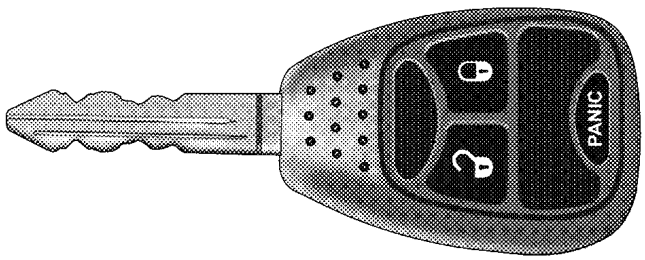
The lights will fade to off after about 30 seconds or they will immediately fade to off once the ignition switch is turned on.

NOTE:

- The front courtesy overhead console, door courtesy lights do not turn off if the dimmer control is in the interior lights ON position (extreme top position).
- The illuminated entry system will not operate if the dimmer control is in the “defeat” position (extreme downward position).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY — IF EQUIPPED



8163e6a8

Three Button Transmitter

This system allows you to lock or unlock the doors from distances up to about 23 feet (7 meters) using a hand held radio transmitter. The transmitter need not be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

To unlock the doors:

Press and release the UNLOCK button on the key fob once to unlock only the driver's door or twice to unlock all the doors. When the UNLOCK button is pressed, the illuminated entry will initiate, the parking lights will flash on twice and if installed, the cargo lamp will turn on for 30 seconds.

The system can be programmed to unlock all the doors or drivers door only upon the first UNLOCK button press by using the following procedure:

- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), refer to "Remote Key Unlock," under "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)," under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual for details.
- For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC, perform the following procedure:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on your key.

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the UNLOCK button while still holding the LOCK button.

4. Release both buttons at the same time.

5. This will enable you to unlock all doors on the first press of the UNLOCK button.

6. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

To lock the doors:

Press and release the LOCK button on the transmitter to lock all doors. If the ignition is OFF, when the doors are locked, the parking lights will flash on once and the horn will chirp once.

- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), refer to "Remote Key Unlock," under "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)," under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual for details.
- For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC, perform the following procedure:

The horn chirp feature will be shipped from the assembly plants activated. If desired this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the LOCK button on a programmed (i.e. functional) key fob.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Continue to hold the LOCK button, wait at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the PANIC button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Vehicles will be shipped from the assembly plants with the park lamp flash feature activated. If desired, this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), refer to "Remote Key Unlock," under "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)," under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual for details.
- For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC, perform the following procedure:

1. Perform this operation while standing outside the vehicle.

2. Press and hold the UNLOCK button on a programmed (i.e. functional) key fob.

3. Continue to hold the UNLOCK button, wait at least 4 seconds, but no longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the LOCK button. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Panic Alarm

To activate the Panic mode while the ignition is OFF press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter once. When the Panic mode is activated, the interior lights will illuminate, the headlamps and parking lights will flash, and the horn will sound.

To cancel the Panic mode press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter a second time, after 5 seconds. Panic mode will automatically cancel after 3 minutes or if the vehicle is started and exceeds 15 mph. During the Panic Mode, the door locks and remote keyless entry systems will function normally. Panic mode will not disarm the security system on vehicles so equipped.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

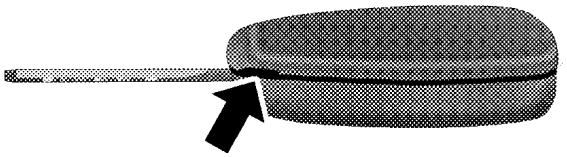
If your Keyless Entry Transmitter fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions.

1. Weak batteries in transmitter. The expected life of the batteries is from one to two years.

2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, and some mobile or CB radios.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmitter Battery Service



81182c72

Transmitter Battery Replacement

NOTE: Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

The recommended replacement battery is CR2032 battery.

NOTE: Do not touch the battery terminals that are on the back housing or the printed circuit board.

1. With the transmitter buttons facing down, remove the small screw, and separate the two halves of the transmitter. Make sure not to damage the rubber gasket during removal.

2. Remove and replace the battery. When replacing the battery, match the + sign on battery to the + sign on the inside of the battery clip, located on back cover. Avoid touching the new battery with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

3. To reassemble the transmitter case, snap the two halves of the case together. Make sure there is an even "gap" between the two halves. If equipped, install and tighten the screw until snug. Test transmitter operation.

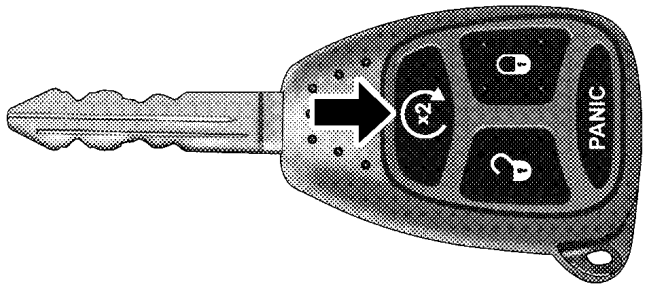
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REMOTE STARTING SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with a remote starting system, which will allow the vehicle to be started from distances up to approximately 300 feet away from the vehicle using the remote keyless entry key fob which is part of your ignition key.

In order to remote start your vehicle, the hood, and all the doors must be closed.

To remote start your vehicle, press the REMOTE START button on the key fob twice within three seconds. To indicate that the vehicle is about to start, the parking lights will flash and the horn will sound briefly.



81931ecc

Remote Start Transmitter

Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes. To cancel remote start, press the REMOTE START button once.

The parking lamps will remain illuminated to indicate that the vehicle has remote started and the engine is running. The lamps will turn off when the ignition is turned to RUN or the remote start is cancelled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To enter the vehicle while the engine is running during a remote start, you must first unlock the vehicle using the UNLOCK button on the key fob. After the vehicle is unlocked, you have 15 minutes to enter the vehicle, insert the key in the Ignition and move it to the RUN position, otherwise the engine will cancel remote start and automatically turn off.

Remote start will also cancel if any of the following occur:

- If the engine stalls or RPM exceeds 2500
- Any engine warning lamps come on
- The hood is opened
- The hazard switch is pressed
- The transmission is moved out of park
- The brake pedal is pressed.

The vehicle can be started remotely up to a maximum of two times. The vehicle is also allowed a maximum of one failed start, where the remote start sequence was initiated but the engine stopped cranking without starting. After either of these conditions, or if the Vehicle Theft Alarm is alarming, or if the PANIC button was pressed, the vehicle must be reset by inserting a valid key into the ignition and moving it to the RUN position, then back to LOCK.

DOOR LOCKS

Manual Door Locks — If Equipped

Front and Rear doors may be locked, by moving the lock plunger up or down.

All doors may be opened with the inside door handle without lifting the lock plunger. Doors locked before closing will remain locked when closed.

The ignition key will unlock all the locks on your vehicle.

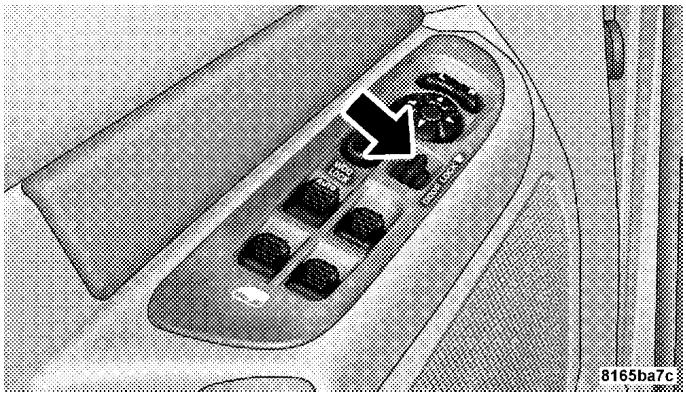
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **For personal security and safety in the event of an accident, lock the vehicle doors when you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the keys in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Power Door Locks — If Equipped

A power door lock switch is on each front door trim panel. Use this switch to lock or unlock the doors.



Power Door Lock Switch Location

If you press the power door lock switch while the key is in the ignition, and any front door is open, the power locks will not operate. This prevents you from accidentally locking your keys in the vehicle. Removing the key or closing the door will allow the locks to operate. A chime will sound if the key is in the ignition switch and a door is open, as a reminder to remove the key.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Door Locks – If Equipped

If this feature is enabled, your door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph.

Automatic Door Lock Programming

This feature is enabled when your vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant and can be disabled by using the following procedure:

- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), refer to "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)" under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual for details.
- For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC, performing the following procedure:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.
2. Fasten your seat belt (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chiming that may confuse you during this programming procedure).
3. Place the key into the ignition.
4. Within 15 seconds cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times; ending in the LOCK position **(do not start the engine).**
5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the LOCK direction.
6. A single chime will be heard to indicate the feature has been disabled.
7. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.
8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be disabled. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto Unlock On Exit — If Equipped

This feature unlocks all of the doors of the vehicle when any door is opened. This will occur only after the vehicle has been shifted into the Park position after the vehicle has been driven (shifted out of Park and all doors closed).

This feature will not operate if there is any manual operation of the power door locks (Lock or Unlock).

Auto Unlock On Exit Programming — If Equipped

Customer Programming sequence to enable or disable the Auto Unlock Feature:

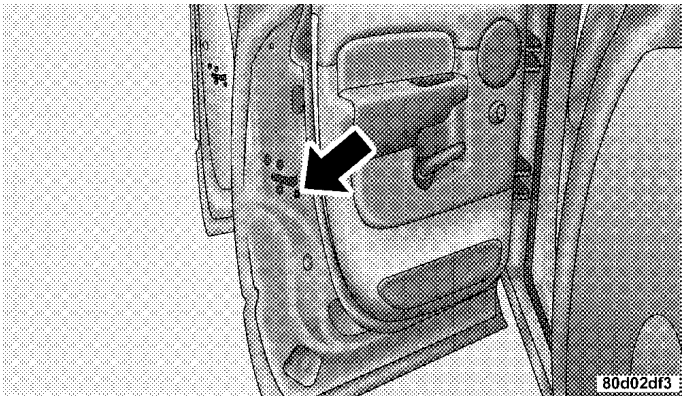
- For vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC), refer to "Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)" under "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" in Section 3 of this manual for details.
- For vehicles not equipped with the EVIC, performing the following procedure:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.
2. Fasten your seat belt (fastening the seat belt will cancel any chimes that may be confusing during this programming procedure).
3. Insert the key into the ignition.
4. Within 15 seconds, cycle the key from the LOCK position to the ON/RUN position a minimum of four times ending in the LOCK position **(do not start the engine)**.
5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the UNLOCK direction.
6. A single chime will sound to indicate the feature has been changed.
7. Repeat the above steps to alternate the availability of this feature.
8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be changed. If necessary repeat the above procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

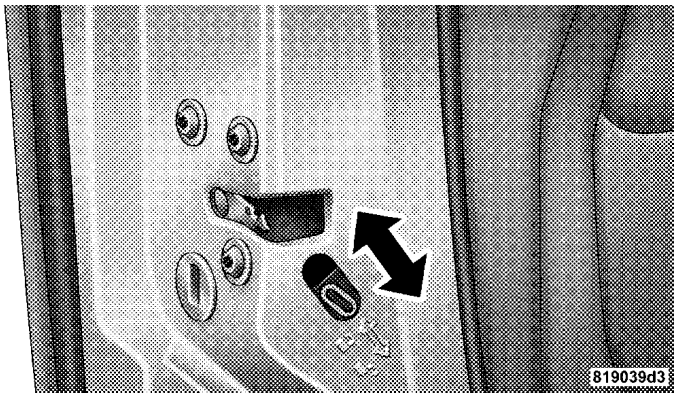
Child Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors of your vehicle have the child-protection door lock system.



Child Protection Door Lock Location

To use the system, open each rear door, slide the lever UP to engage the locks and DOWN to disengage the child-protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.



Child Lock Control

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

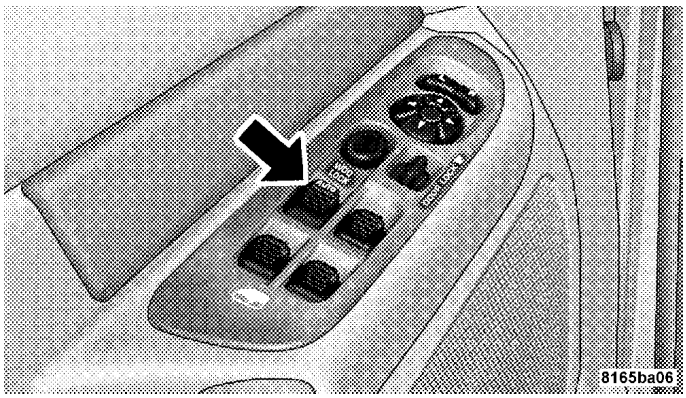
Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the child protection locks are engaged.

NOTE: After setting the child protection door lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.

NOTE: For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

WINDOWS

Power Windows – If Equipped



Power Window Switches

The control on the left front door panel has up-down switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

and on the rear doors of Quad Cab and Mega Cab models. The windows will operate only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON or ACC (Accessory) position.

WARNING!

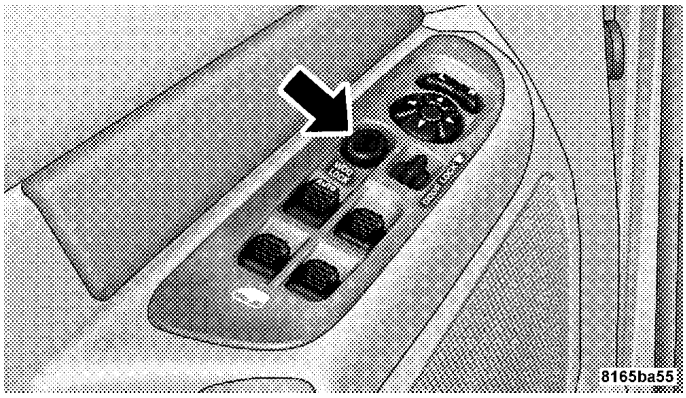
Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the keys in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

Auto Down (Driver's Side Only)

The driver's window switch has an Auto Down feature. Press the window switch past the detent, release, and the window will go down automatically.

Window Lockout Switch (4 Door Models Only)

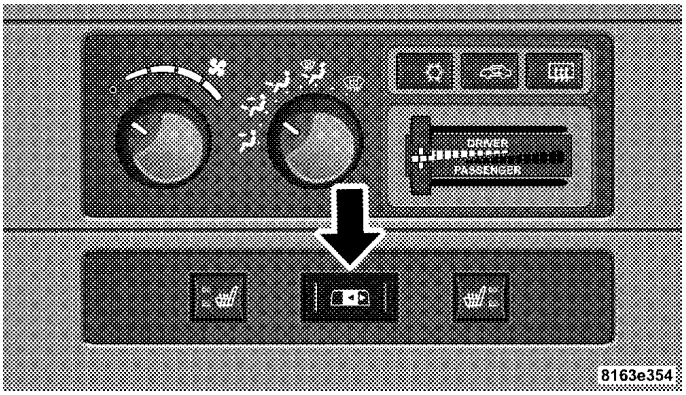
The window lockout switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the other doors. To disable the window controls on the other doors, press the window lock button. To enable the window controls, press the window control button again.



Window Lockout Switch

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Sliding Rear Window – If Equipped



Power Sliding Rear Window Switch

The power sliding rear window switch is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls. Press the right side of the switch to open the glass and the left side of the switch to close the glass.

Sliding Rear Window – If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OCCUPANT RESTRAINTS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems. These include the front and rear seat belts for the driver and all passengers, front airbags for both the driver and front passenger. If you will be carrying children too small for adult-size belts, your seat belts also can be used to hold infant and child restraint systems.

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

WARNING!

In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and that they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. **Everyone** in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the Quad Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts. The belt webbing retractor is designed to lock during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the belt to move freely with you under

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

normal conditions. But in a collision, the belt will lock and reduce the risk of your striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out.

WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

WARNING!

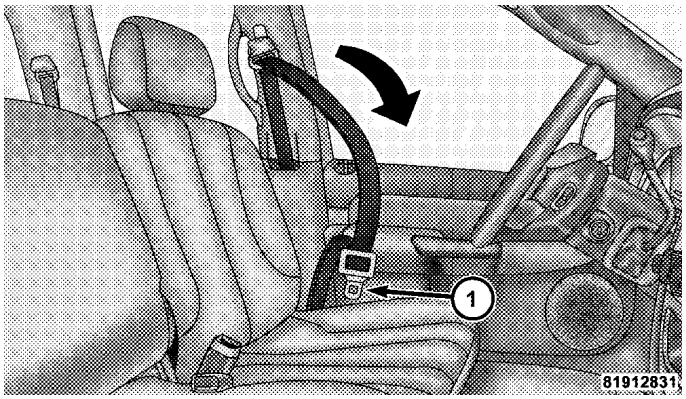
- **Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is dangerous. Seat belts are designed to go around the large bones of your body. These are the strongest parts of your body and can take the forces of a collision the best. Wearing your belt in the wrong place could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of part of the belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.**
- **Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in an accident, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.

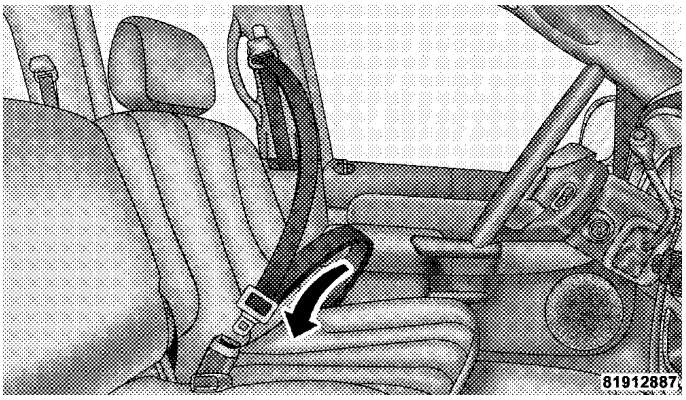
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, next to your arm in the rear seat. Grasp the latch plate and pull out the belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the belt to go around your lap.



1 — Latch Plate

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. When the belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



Latch Plate To Buckle

WARNING!

• A belt buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

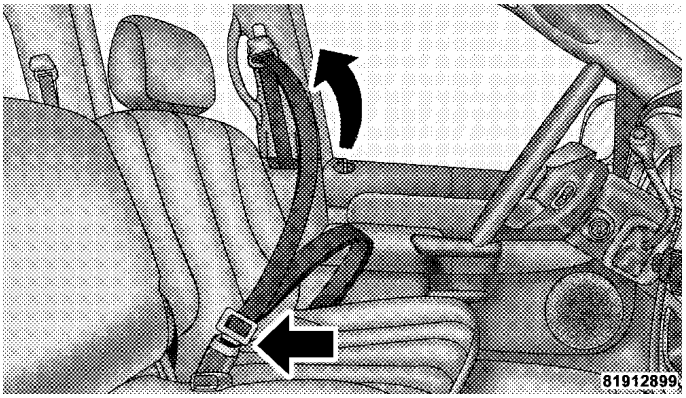
• A belt that is too loose will not protect you as well. In a sudden stop you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.

• A belt that is worn under your arm is very dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. And a belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren’t as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.

• A shoulder belt placed behind will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Position the lap belt across your thighs, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug belt reduces the risk of sliding under the belt in a collision.



Removing Slack From Belt

WARNING!

- **A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of internal injury in a collision. The belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap belt as low as possible and keep it snug.**
- **A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt is straight. If you can't straighten a belt in your vehicle, take it to your dealer and have it fixed.**

5. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. To release the belt, push the red button on the buckle. The belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the belt to retract fully.

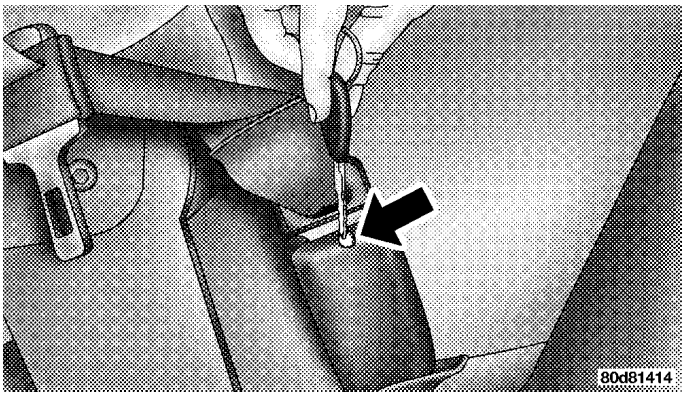
WARNING!

A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.) or if the airbag deployed.

Standard Cab Front Center Three Point Belt

1. The front center seat belt on the Standard Cab may be disconnected to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats. The black latch plate can be detached from the black keyed seat belt buckle located on the inboard side of the passenger seat. Insert the vehicle ignition key into the center white slot on the black buckle. The black buckle latch plate can be removed when the key is pressed into the buckle. Allow the retractor to take up the surplus webbing, and the buckles will hang vertically from the cab back exit bezel, thus freeing up all the area behind the front seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



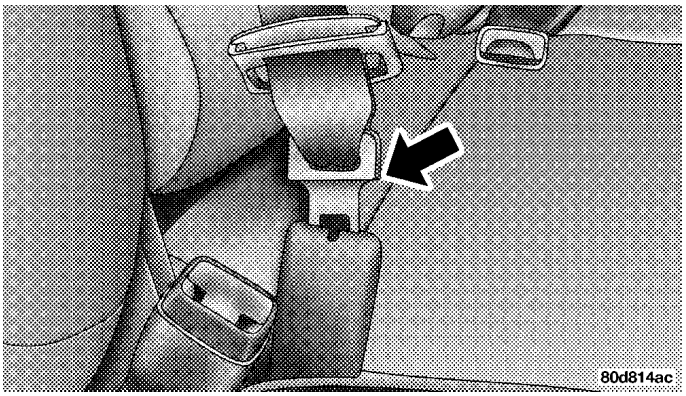
Detaching Buckle with Key

2. To reattach the seat belt to the front center seat, pull the black buckle latch plate forward from the cab back panel and insert it into the black keyed buckle until there is an audible click. Refer to the previous section for the proper seat belt usage.

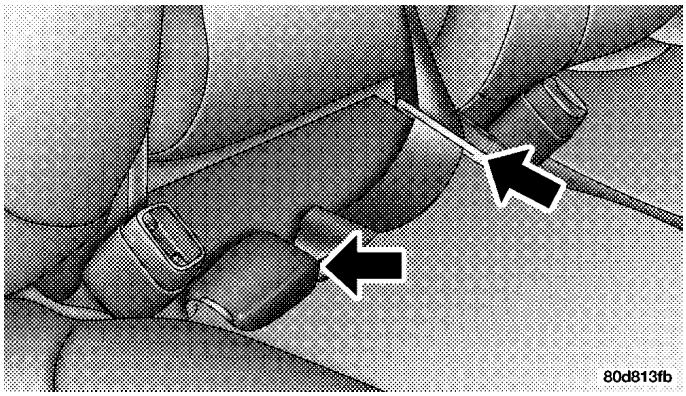
WARNING!

- **If the black latch and black buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.**
- **When reattaching the black latch and black buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the black latch and black buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the black latch and black buckle.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Inserting Latch Plate



In Use Position

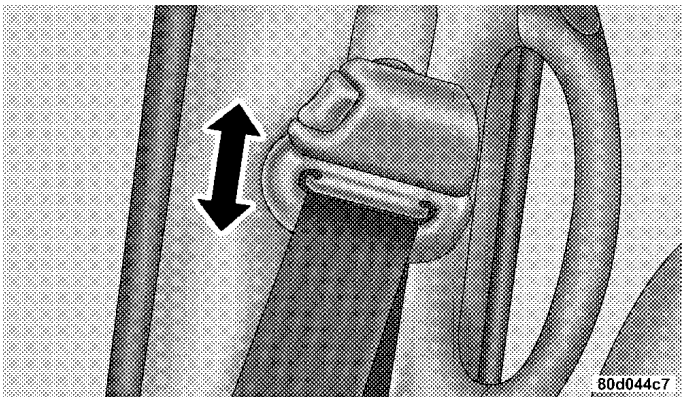
WARNING!

If the black latch and buckle are not connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not restrain you properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the front row outboard seats, the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to help position the belt away from your neck. Press the button located on the upper belt guide, and then move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



Adjusting Upper Shoulder Belt

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you'll prefer a higher position. When you release the anchorage, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

Automatic Locking Restraint (ALR) Mode – If Equipped

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is available on all passenger seating positions with a combination lap / shoulder belt.

When To Use The Automatic Locking Mode

Anytime a child safety seat is installed in a passenger seating position. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How To Use The Automatic Locking Mode

1. Buckle the combination lap/shoulder belt.

2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is extracted.

3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Center Lap Belts

The center seating position for the Quad Cab front seat has a lap belt only. To fasten the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a ″click.″ To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull. To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and erect in the seat, then adjust the belt as tightly as is comfortable.

WARNING!

- **A lap belt worn too loose or too high is dangerous.**
- **A belt worn too loose can allow you to slip down and under the belt in a collision.**
- **A belt that is too loose or too high will apply crash forces to the abdomen, not to the stronger hip bones. In either case, the risk of internal injuries is greater. Wear a lap belt low and snug.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Belt Pretensioners

The seat belts for both front seating positions are equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt system in the event of a collision. These devices improve the performance of the seat belt by assuring that the belt is tight about the occupant early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

NOTE: These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the airbag control module. Like the airbags, the pretensioners are single use items. After a collision that is severe enough to deploy the airbags and pretensioners, both must be replaced.

Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert)

If the driver's seat belt has not been buckled within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle and if the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will alert the driver to buckle their seat belt. The driver should also instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. If the driver unbuckles the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion an immediate chime will be heard and, the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will continue to chime and flash the Seat Belt Warning Light for 96 seconds or until the driver's seat belt is buckled. The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will be reactivated if the ignition is cycled, driver's seat belt is unbuckled for more than 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or by following these steps:

NOTE: The following steps must occur within the first 60 seconds of the ignition switch being turned to the ON or START position. DaimlerChrysler does not recommend deactivating the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert).

1. With all doors closed and the ignition switch in any position except On or Start, buckle the driver's seat belt.

2. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position and wait for the Seat Belt Warning Light to turn off.

3. Within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle, unbuckle and then re-buckle the driver's seat belt at least three times within 10 seconds, ending with the seat belt buckled.

4. Turn off the engine. A single chime will sound to signify that you have successfully completed the programming.

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

NOTE: Although the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Warning Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Belts and Pregnant Women

We recommend that pregnant women use seat belts throughout their pregnancies. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug against the hips as possible. Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

Seat Belt Extender

If a seat belt is too short, even when fully extended, your dealer can provide you with a seat belt extender. This extender should be used only if the existing belt is not long enough. When it is not required, remove the extender and store it.

WARNING!

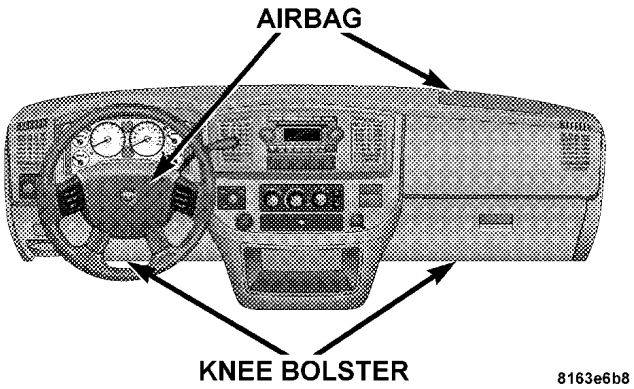
Using a seat belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use the seat belt extender when the lap belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the extender when not needed.

Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbag

This vehicle may have front airbags for both the driver and front passenger (if equipped) as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's front airbag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger's front airbag (if equipped) is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words SRS AIRBAG are embossed on the airbag covers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These airbags are certified to the new Federal regulations that allow less forceful deployments.



This vehicle may also be equipped **without** a passenger side airbag. In this case the passenger side airbag will be replaced with a storage bin.

WARNING!

- **Do not put anything on or around the airbag covers or attempt to manually open them. You may damage the airbags and you could be injured because the airbags are not there to protect you. These protective covers for the airbag cushions are designed to open only when the airbags are inflating.**
- **Do not mount any aftermarket equipment such as trailer brake controllers, snowplow controllers, auxiliary light switches, radios, etc. on or behind the knee bolster. Knee bolsters are designed to work with the air bag and seat belt to protect you. Mounting any additional equipment on or behind the knee bolster can cause injury during a crash.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Airbags inflate in moderate to high speed impacts. Along with the seatbelts, front airbags work with the instrument panel knee bolsters to provide improved protection for the driver and front passenger.

The seat belts are designed to protect you in many types of collisions. The front airbags deploy in moderate to severe frontal collisions. In certain types of collisions, the front airbags may be triggered. But even in collisions where the airbags work, you need the seat belts to keep you in the right position for the airbags to protect you properly.

Here are some simple steps you can follow to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying airbag.

- Children 12 years and under should ride buckled up in a rear seat, if available.
- Infants in rear facing child restraints must **NEVER** ride in the front seat of a vehicle with a passenger front airbag **unless the airbag is turned off** (Standard Cab Vehicles Only). An airbag deployment can cause severe injury or death to infants in that position. See the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (If Equipped) section.
- If your vehicle does not have a rear seat, see the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (If Equipped) section.
- Children that are not big enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt (see section on Child Restraints) should be secured in the rear seat in child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats. Older children who do not use child restraints or belt-positioning booster seats should ride properly buckled up in the rear seat. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
- All occupants should use their seat belts properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the airbag room to inflate.

WARNING!

- **Relying on the airbags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The airbags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions the airbags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have airbags.**
- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during airbag deployment could cause serious injury. Airbags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**

Airbag System Components

The airbag system consists of the following:

- Airbag Control Module
- AIRBAG Readiness Light
- Driver Airbag
- Passenger Airbag (If Equipped)
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Crash Sensor
- Interconnecting Wiring
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Passenger Side Frontal Airbag ON/OFF Switch (Standard Cab Vehicles Only) (If Equipped)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How The Airbag System Works

- The airbag control module determines if a frontal collision is severe enough to require the airbags to inflate.
- The airbag control module will not detect roll over, or rear collisions.
- The airbag control module also monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or RUN positions. These include all of the items listed above except the knee bolsters, the instrument panel, and the steering wheel and column. If the key is in the ″Off″ position, in the ACC position or not in the ignition, the airbags are not on and will not inflate
- The airbag control module also turns on the AIR BAG light in the instrument panel for 6 to 8 seconds when the ignition is first turned on, then turns the light off.

- If it detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the light either momentarily or continuously. The instrument cluster will flash the seat belt indicator if it detects a fault with the airbag indicator.

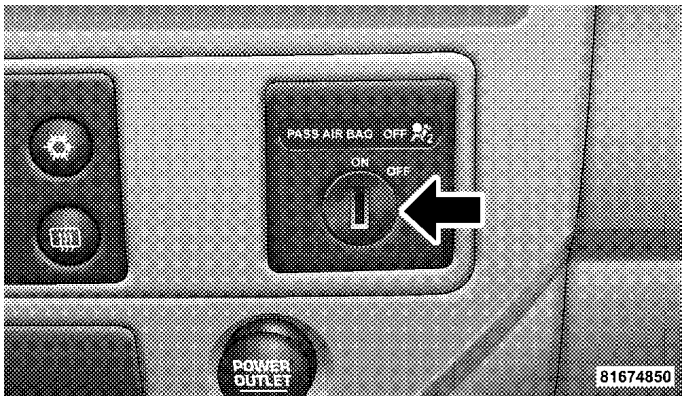
WARNING!

Ignoring the AIR BAG light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the airbags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have the airbag system checked right away.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- When the airbag control module detects a collision requiring the airbags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of nontoxic gas is generated to inflate the airbags. The airbag covers separate and fold out of the way as the airbags inflate to their full size. The airbags fully inflate in milliseconds. This is less time than it takes you to blink your eyes. The airbags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger (if equipped with passenger side airbag). The driver's front airbag deflates through vents towards the instrument panel. The passenger's front airbag (if equipped) is deflated through vent holes in the sides of the airbag. In this way the airbags do not interfere with your control of the vehicle.
- The knee impact bolsters help protect the knees and position you for the best interaction with the front airbag.

Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch – (Standard Cab Vehicles Only) (If Equipped)



The passenger front airbag is to be turned off only if the passenger:

- is an infant (less than 1 year old) who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because the rear seat is too small for a rear-facing infant restraint or

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

because the infant has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the infant,

- is a child, age 1 to 12 who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because there is no rear seat position available, or because the child has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the child,
- has a medical condition which makes passenger airbag (if equipped) inflation (deployment) a greater risk for the passenger than the risk of hitting the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash.

WARNING!

Whenever an airbag is turned off, even a lap/shoulder belted passenger may hit their head, neck, or chest on the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash. This may result in serious injury or death.

To Shut Off the Passenger Airbag (Standard Cab Vehicles Only) (If Equipped)

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (if equipped), push the key in and turn clockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will shut off the passenger airbag (if equipped). The “Off” light near the switch will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Turn On the Passenger Airbag (Standard Cab Vehicles Only) (If Equipped)

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch (If Equipped), push the key in and turn counterclockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will turn on the passenger airbag (if equipped). The "Off" light near the switch will be off when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If A Deployment Occurs

The airbag system is designed to deploy when the air bag control module detects a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, and then immediately to deflate.

NOTE: A frontal collision that is not severe enough to need airbag protection will not activate the system. This does not mean something is wrong with the airbag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the airbags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The nylon airbag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the driver and front passenger as the airbags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.
- As the airbags deflate you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the nontoxic gas used for airbag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.

- It is not advisable to drive your vehicle after the airbags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the airbags will not be in place to protect you.

WARNING!

Deployed airbags can't protect you in another collision. Have the airbags replaced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Enhanced Accident Response System

If the airbags deploy after an impact and the electrical system remains functional, vehicles equipped with power door locks will unlock automatically. In addition, approximately 10 seconds after the vehicle has stopped moving, the interior lights will light until the ignition switch is turned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintaining Your Airbag Systems

WARNING!

- **Modifications to any part of the airbag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured because the airbags are not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or frame.**
- **You need proper knee impact protection in a collision. Do not mount or locate any aftermarket equipment on or behind the knee bolster.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the airbag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has airbags.**

NOTE: Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate

Airbag Light

You will want to have the airbags ready to inflate for your protection in an impact. While the airbag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the system promptly:

- The airbag light does not come on or flickers during the 6 to 8 seconds when the ignition switch is first turned on.
- The light remains on or flickers after the 6 to 8 second interval.
- The light flickers or comes on and remains on while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If the speedometer, tachometer or any engine related gauges are not working, the airbag control module may also be disabled. The airbags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Promptly check fuse block for blown fuses. Refer to the label located on the inside of the fuse block cover for the proper airbag fuses. See your dealer if the fuse is good.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

In the event of an accident, your vehicle is designed to record up to 5-seconds of specific vehicle data parameters (see the following list) in an event data recorder prior to the moment of airbag deployment, or near deployment, and up to a quarter second of high-speed deceleration data during and/or after airbag deployment. EDR data are ONLY recorded if an airbag deploys, or nearly deploys, and are otherwise unavailable.

NOTE:

1. A near-deployment event occurs when the airbag sensor detects severe vehicle deceleration usually indicative of a crash, but not severe enough to warrant airbag deployment.

2. Under certain circumstances, EDR data may not be recorded (e.g., loss of battery power).

In conjunction with other data gathered during a complete accident investigation, the electronic data may be used by DaimlerChrysler Corporation and others to learn more about the possible causes of crashes and associated injuries in order to assess and improve vehicle performance. In addition to crash investigations initiated by DaimlerChrysler Corporation, such investigations may be requested by customers, insurance carriers, government officials, and professional crash researchers, such as those associated with universities, and with hospital and insurance organizations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the event that an investigation is undertaken by DaimlerChrysler Corporation (regardless of initiative), the company or its designated representative will first obtain permission of the appropriate custodial entity for the vehicle (usually the vehicle owner or lessee) before accessing the electronic data stored, unless ordered to download data by a court with legal jurisdiction (i.e., pursuant to a warrant). A copy of the data will be provided to the custodial entity upon request. General data that does not identify particular vehicles or crashes may be released for incorporation in aggregate crash databases, such as those maintained by the US government and various states. Data of a potentially sensitive nature, such as would identify a particular driver, vehicle, or crash, will be treated confidentially. Confidential data will not be disclosed by DaimlerChrysler Corporation to any third party except when:

1. Used for research purposes, such as to match data with a particular crash record in an aggregate database, provided confidentiality of personal data is thereafter preserved

2. Used in defense of litigation involving a DaimlerChrysler Corporation product

3. Requested by police under a legal warrant

4. Otherwise required by law

Data Parameters that May Be Recorded:

- Diagnostic trouble code(s) and warning lamp status for electronically-controlled safety systems, including the airbag system
- Airbag disable lamp status (if equipped)
- ″Time″ of airbag deployment (in terms of ignition cycles and vehicle mileage)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Airbag deployment level (if applicable)
- Impact acceleration and angle
- Seatbelt status
- Brake status (service and parking brakes)
- Accelerator status (including vehicle speed)
- Engine control status (including engine speed)
- Transmission gear selection
- Cruise control status
- Traction / stability control status
- Tire pressure monitoring system status (if equipped)

Child Restraint

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up all the time — babies and children, too. Every state in the United States and all Canadian provinces require that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years and under should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

In a collision, an unrestrained child, even a tiny baby, can become a missile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap can become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

Infants and Small Children

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Use the restraint that is correct for your child:

- Safety experts recommend that children ride rearward-facing in the vehicle until they are at least one year old and weigh at least 20 lbs (9 kg). Two types of child restraints can be used rearward-facing: infant carriers and ″convertible″ child seats. Both types of child restraints are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.
- The infant carrier is only used rearward-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children who weigh up to about 20 lbs (9 kg). ″Convertible″ child seats can be used either rearward-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rearward-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rearward-facing by children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) but are less than one year old.
- Rearward-facing child seats must **NEVER** be used in the front seat of a vehicle with a front passenger airbag (if equipped) unless the airbag is turned off. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in this position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) and who are older than one year can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who weigh 20 to 40 lbs (9 to 18 kg) and who are older than one year. These child seats are also held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.
- The belt-positioning booster seat is for children weighing more than 40 lbs (18 kg), but who are still too small to fit the vehicle's seat belts properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seat back, they should use a belt-positioning-booster seat. The child and booster seat are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt. (Some booster seats are equipped with a front shield and are held in the vehicle by the lap portion.) For further information refer to www.seatcheck.org.

WARNING!

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **A rearward facing child restraint should only be used in a rear seat, or in the front seat if the passenger's front airbag is Off. If the airbag is left On, a rearward facing child restraint in the front seat may be struck by a deploying passenger airbag (if equipped) which may cause severe or fatal injury to the infant.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Here are some tips for getting the most out of your child restraint:

- Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. We also recommend that you make sure that you can install the child restraint in the vehicle where you will use it before you buy it.
- The restraint must be appropriate for your child's weight and height. Check the label on the restraint for weight and height limits.
- Carefully follow the instructions that come with the restraint. If you install the restraint improperly, it may not work when you need it.
- The passenger seat belts are equipped with Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR), which are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip.

  Pull the belt from the retractor until there is enough to allow you to pass through the child restraint and slide the latch plate into the buckle. Then pull on the belt until it is all removed from the retractor. Allow the belt to return to the retractor, pulling on the excess webbing to tighten the lap portion about the child restraint. Refer to the ″Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) Mode″ earlier in this section.
- In the rear seat, you may have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt several times to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out.
- If the belt still can't be tightened, or if pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the latch plate

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still can't make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position.

- Buckle the child into the seat according to the child restraint manufacturer's directions.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or collision, it could strike the occupants or seat backs and cause serious personal injury.

WARNING!

Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

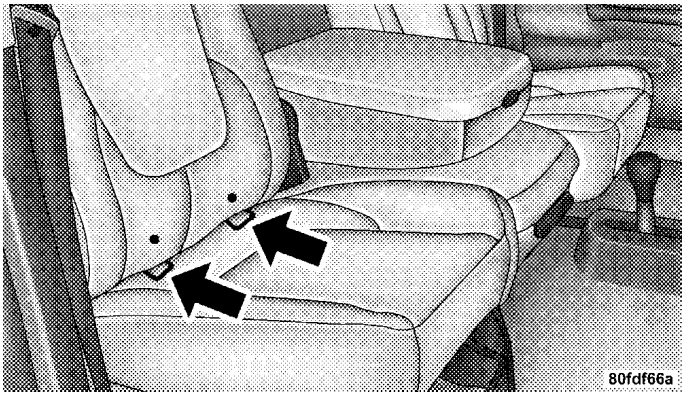
Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH)

Each vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren. LATCH child restraint anchorage systems are installed in the Standard Cab passenger seat position and the Quad Cab rear seat outboard positions. LATCH equipped seating positions feature both lower anchor bars, located at the back of the seat cushion, and tether strap anchorages, located behind the seatback (refer to Child Restraint Tether Anchor later in this section).

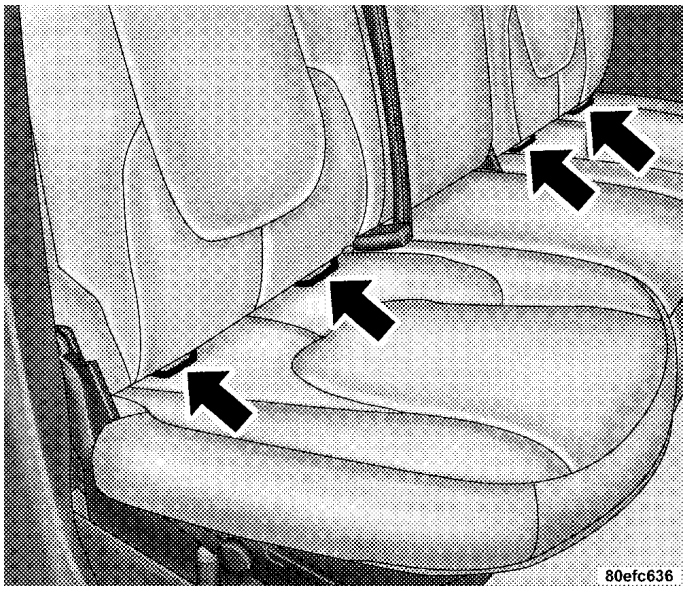
Identification dots are located above the standard cab front seat lower anchorages as a guide for locating lower anchors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: For children riding in the front seat of a Standard Cab model refer to the "Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch" (If Equipped) located in this section.



Standard Cab Passenger Seat



Quad Cab Rear Outboard Seats

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child restraint systems having attachments designed to connect to the lower anchorages are now available. Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to the seatback tether anchorage have been available for some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for some of their older products.

Because the lower anchorages are to be introduced to passenger carrying vehicles over a period of years, child restraint systems having attachments for those anchorages will continue to have features for installation in vehicles using the lap or lap / shoulder belt. They will also have tether straps, and you are urged to take advantage of all of the available attachments provided with your child restraint in any vehicle.

NOTE: When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, please ensure that all seat belts not being used for occupant restraints are stowed and out of reach of children. It is recommended that before installing the child restraint, buckle the seat belt so the seat belt is tucked behind the child restraint and out of reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of tucking the seat belt behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. This should stow the seat belt out of the reach of an inquisitive child. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and should not be played with, and never leave your child unattended in the vehicle.

NOTE: If your child restraint seat is not LATCH compatible, install the restraint using the vehicle seat belting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing the Child Restraint System

WARNING!

Do not install child restraint systems equipped with LATCH attachments in the center position of a Quad Cab model rear seat. The LATCH anchorages in this seat are designed for the two outboard seating positions only. A child may be placed in the rear center seating position of a Quad Cab model using the seat belt and child tether anchorage. Failure to follow this may result in serious or fatal injury.

We urge that you carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Many, but not all, restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector and a means for adjusting the tension in the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rearward-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap, a hook and means for adjusting the tension in the strap.

In general, you will first loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and tether straps so that you can more easily attach the hook or connector to the lower anchorages and tether anchorages. Then tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat.

Not all child restraint systems will be installed as we have described here. Again, carefully follow the instructions that come with the child restraint system.

WARNING!

Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraint Tether Anchor

Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to tether anchors have been available for some time. In fact, many child restraint manufacturers will provide add-on tether strap kits for their older products. Regular Cab models of Ram Pickups have two tether anchorages, one each behind the front center and right seats. Quad Cab and Mega Cab models have three anchorages, one behind each of the rear seats.

WARNING!

An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to seat failure and injury to the child. In a collision, the seat could come loose and allow the child to crash into the inside of the vehicle or other passengers, or even be thrown from the vehicle. Use only the anchor positions directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap. Follow the instructions below. See your dealer for help if necessary.

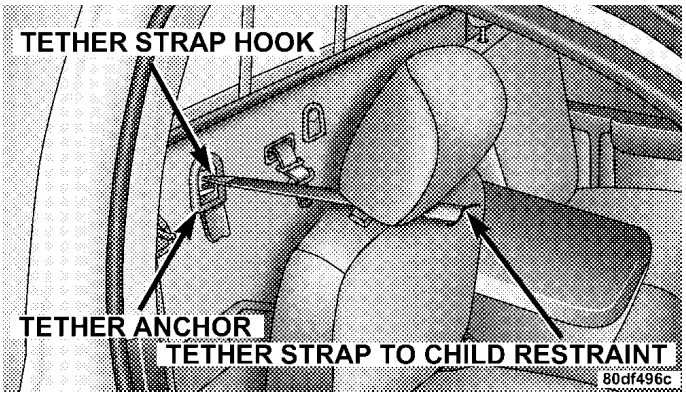
Tether Anchorage Points at the Right and Center Front Seat (Regular Cab - All Seats)

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

2. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Regular Cab Tether Strap Mounting

Multiple Child Restraint Installation Sequence - (Quad Cab Rear Seats)

1. Obtain tether straps by raising the head restraints and reaching between the rear glass and rear seat. The tether strap may be retained with an elastic band. Accessibility to the tether strap is greatly improved by raising the seat cushion to the "up" position. Remove the elastic before use.

2. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and then to the anchor directly behind the center rear seat.

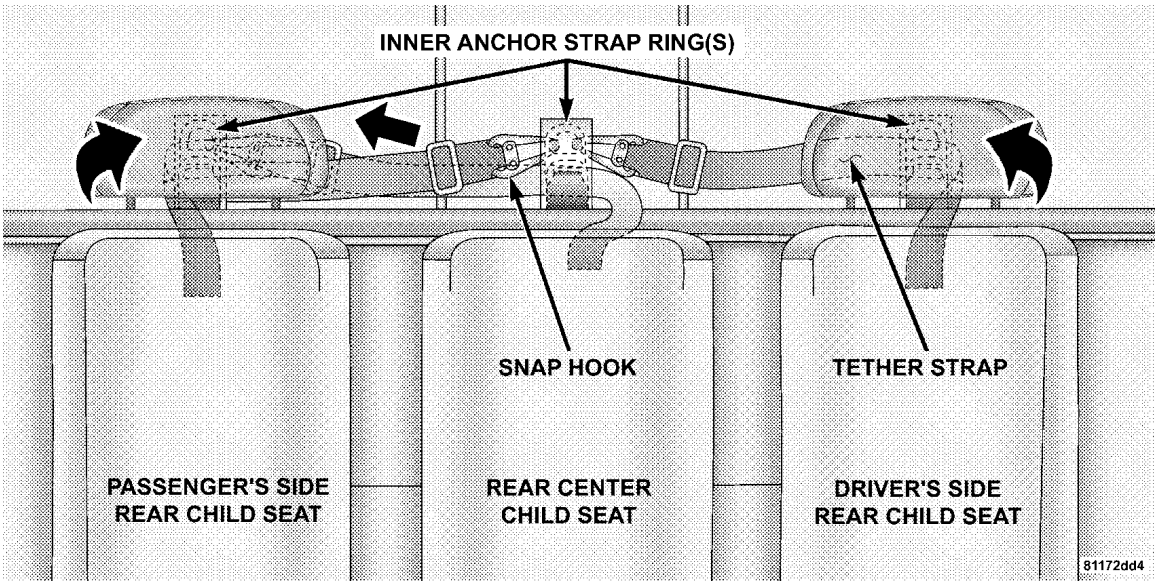
3. Pass each tether strap hook under the head restraint and through the loop of webbing behind the child seat.

4. Route each tether strap to the anchor behind the center seat, and attach the hooks to the metal ring.

5. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat and to the anchor directly behind the right seat.

6. Install each child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Multiple Child Restraint Quad Cab

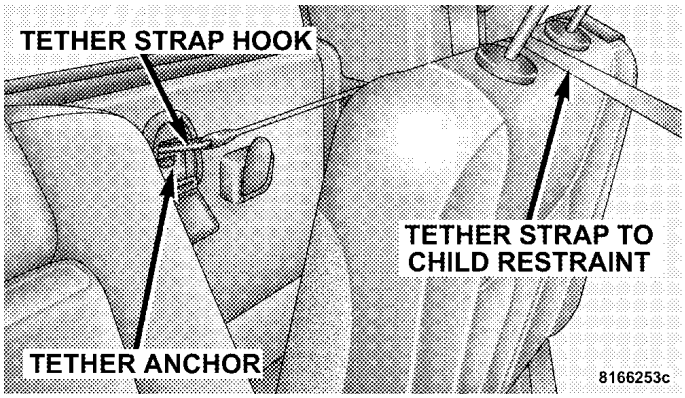
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tether Anchorage Points at All Three Seating Positions (Mega Cab)

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back under the head restraint to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.

2. Lift the cover, and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal.

3. Install the child restraint and remove the slack in the tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



Mega Cab Tether Strap Mounting

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Children Too Large for Booster Seats

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seat back should use the lap/shoulder belt in a rear seat.

- Make sure that the child is upright in the seat.
- The lap portion should be low on the hips and as snug as possible.
- Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.

If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back.

NEW ENGINE BREAK-IN

5.7L Gas Engine

A long break-in period is not required for the engine in your new vehicle. Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable. While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration, within the limits of local traffic laws, contributes to a good break-in.

Avoid wide open throttle acceleration in low gear.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high quality, energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with the anticipated climatic conditions under which vehicle operation will occur. The recommended viscosity and quality grades are discussed in Section 7 under Maintenance Procedures, Engine Oil.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NON-DETERGENT OR STRAIGHT MINERAL OILS MUST NEVER BE USED.

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles of operation. This is a normal part of the break-in and is not an indication of difficulty.

CAUTION!

- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) your new vehicle is driven, do not tow a trailer. Doing so may damage your axles, driveline and vehicle.**
- **Limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) during the first 500 miles (805 km) of towing.**

6.7L Diesel Engine

Your Cummins 24 Valve Turbo Diesel engine does not require a break-in period due to its construction. Normal operation is allowed, provided the following recommendations are followed:

NOTE: Light duty operation such as light trailer towing or no load operation, will extend the time before the engine is at full efficiency and may effect the performance of the vehicle aftertreatment (exhaust) system. Reduced fuel economy and power may be seen at this time.

- Warm up the engine before placing it under load.
- Do not operate the engine at idle for prolonged periods.
- Use the appropriate transmission gear to prevent engine lugging.
- Observe vehicle oil pressure and temperature indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Check the coolant and oil levels frequently.
- Vary throttle position at highway speeds when carrying or towing significant weight.

Because of the construction of the Cummins Diesel engine, engine run-in is enhanced by loaded operating conditions which allow the engine parts to achieve final finish and fit during the first 6,000 miles (10 000 km).

CAUTION!

- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) your new vehicle is driven, do not tow a trailer. Doing so may damage your axles, drivetrain and vehicle.**
- **Limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) during the first 500 miles (805 km) of towing.**

SAFETY TIPS

Transporting Passengers

This vehicle is designed to carry passengers in the cab only. For safety reasons, NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.

WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lock Your Vehicle

Always remove the keys from the ignition and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended, even in your own driveway or garage. Try to park your vehicle in a well-lighted area and never invite theft by leaving articles of value exposed.

Exhaust Gas

WARNING!

Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, a potentially toxic gas that by itself is colorless and odorless. To avoid inhaling these gases, the following precautions should be observed:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust your climate control system to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed and the controls in any position except OFF or MAX A/C.
- The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Be aware of changes in the sound of the exhaust system; exhaust fumes detected inside the vehicle; or damage to the underside or rear of the vehicle. Have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace or adjust as required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

Heater Defroster Ducts

Inspect the heater defroster ducts for proper operation. Check for proper air flow through all defroster ducts. If there are any question regarding the operation of your heater defroster ducts, have the system checked by an authorized dealer

Seat Belts

Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after an accident if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.) or if the front airbags have deployed. If there is any question regarding belt or retractor condition, replace the belt.

Airbag Light

The light should come on and remain on for 6 to 8 seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned ON. If the light is not lit during starting, see your authorized dealer. If the light stays on, flickers or comes on while driving, have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If there is a problem with the airbag light the seatbelt light will flash.

Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

Tires

Examine tires for tread wear or uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass or other objects lodged in the tread.

Inspect for tread cuts or sidewall cracks. Check wheel nuts for tightness and tires for proper pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights
Check the operation of all exterior lights. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches
Check for positive closing, latching and locking.

Fluid Leaks
Check area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, water, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if fuel fumes are detected the cause should be located and corrected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

■ Mirrors 81
- □ Inside Mirror 81
- □ Automatic Dimming Mirror – If Equipped 82
- □ Outside Mirrors 82
- □ Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature 83
- □ Electronic Power Mirrors – If Equipped 84
- □ Electric Rear Window Defroster And Heated Sideview Mirrors – If Equipped 85
- □ Trailer Towing Mirrors – If Equipped 85

■ Hands–Free Communication (UConnect™) — If Equipped 87
- □ Operations 89
- □ Phone Call Features 96
- □ UConnect™ System Features 99
- □ Advanced Phone Connectivity 103
- □ Things You Should Know About Your UConnect™ System 106
- □ General Information 113

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

■ Seats 114
□ 40-20-40 Front Seat 114
□ Reclining Seats 115
□ Adjustable Head Restraints 116
□ Manual Rotary Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped 117
□ Power Seats — If Equipped 117
□ Heated Seats — If Equipped 119
■ To Open And Close The Hood 120
■ Lights 122
□ Interior Lights 122
□ Battery Saver 123
□ Headlamp Delay 124
□ Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights 124
□ Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only And Fleet Vehicles) 125
□ Lights-On Reminder 125
□ Fog Lights — If Equipped 125
□ Multifunction Control Lever 126
■ Windshield Wipers And Washers 128
□ Windshield Wipers 128
□ Windshield Washers 129
■ Tilt Steering Column 130
■ Driver Adjustable Pedals — If Equipped 131
□ Adjustment 131
■ Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped 132
□ To Activate 133
□ To Set At A Desired Speed 133

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- To Deactivate 133
- To Resume Speed 133
- To Vary The Speed Setting 133
- To Accelerate For Passing 134

■ Overhead Console With Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer — If Equipped 135

- US/M Button 135
- Reset Button 136
- Global Reset 136
- Step Button 136
- Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO) 137
- Distance To Empty (DTE) 137
- Trip Odometer (ODO) 138
- Elapsed Time (ET) 138
- C/T Button 139
- Automatic Compass Calibration 139
- Manual Compass Calibration 140
- Recalibrating The Compass 140
- Outside Temperature 141

■ Overhead Console With Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) — Diesel Only 142

- Dome/Reading Lights 142
- Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) — If Equipped 143
- Compass/Temperature Button 148

■ Electrical Power Outlets 151

■ Cigar Lighter And Ash Receiver 152

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

■ Cupholders 154
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) — Automatic Transmission 154
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (Bucket Seats) — Automatic Transmission 155
□ Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Manual Transmission 156
□ Rear Cupholder (Quad Cab) — If Equipped . .156
■ Storage 157
□ Center Storage Compartment (40–20–40 Seat) — If Equipped 157
□ Center Storage Compartment (Bucket Seats) — If Equipped 158
□ Storage And Seats (Quad Cab Models) 160
□ Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers 161
■ Rear Window Features 161
□ Electric Rear Window Defroster And Heated Side View Mirrors — If Equipped 161
□ Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped . .162
□ Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped 162
■ Fold Flat Load Floor — If Equipped 163

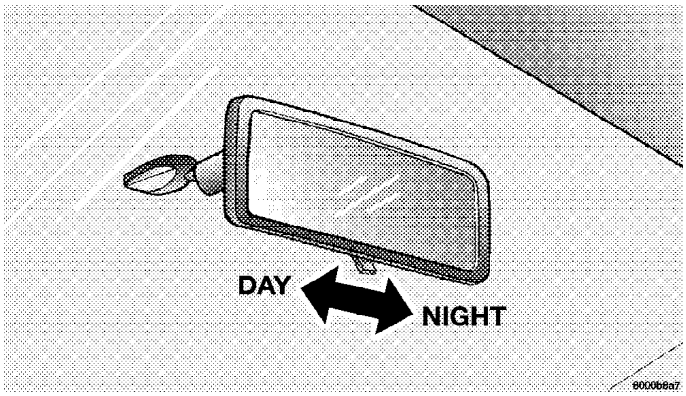
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MIRRORS

Inside Mirror

The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window.

Annoying headlight glare can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward rear of vehicle). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward windshield).

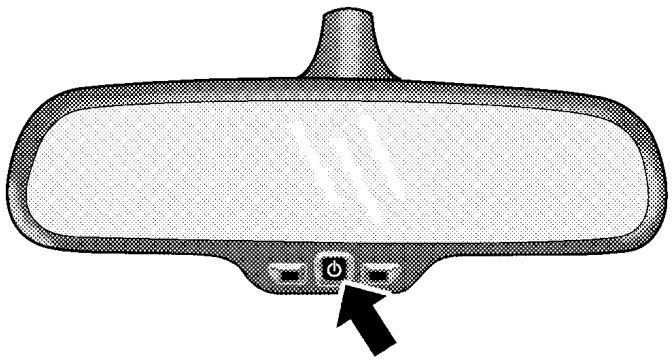


Adjusting Rear View Mirror

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Dimming Mirror – If Equipped

This mirror automatically adjusts for annoying headlight glare from vehicles behind you. You can turn the feature on or off by pressing the button at the base of the mirror. A light in the button will indicate when the dimming feature is activated.



Automatic Dimming Mirror

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

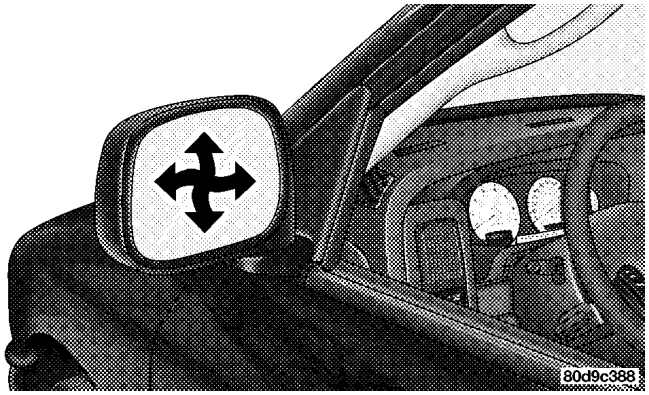
Vehicles and other objects seen in a right side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your right side convex mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the right side convex mirror. Some vehicles will not have a convex right side mirror.

Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature

All 6 x 9 inch exterior mirrors are hinged and may be moved either forward or rearward to resist damage. The hinges have three detent positions; full forward, full rearward, and normal.

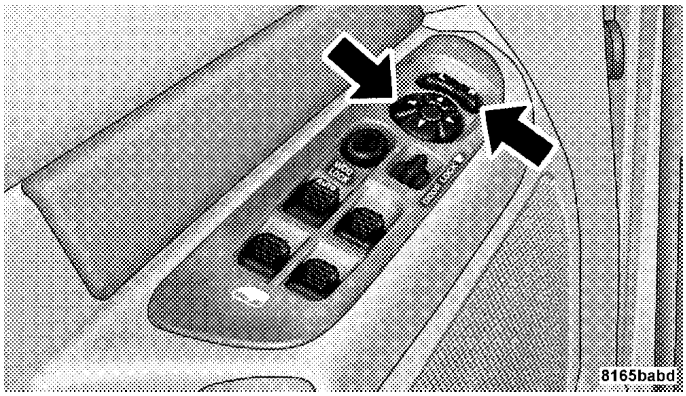
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic Power Mirrors – If Equipped



Power Mirror Movement

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.



Power Mirror Switches

Set the top switch to the left or right for the left or right mirror, and set it to the center off position to prevent accidentally moving a mirror when you are finished adjusting the mirror. To adjust a mirror, select left or right with the top switch, and press one of the four arrows for the direction you want the mirror to move.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Sideview Mirrors – If Equipped

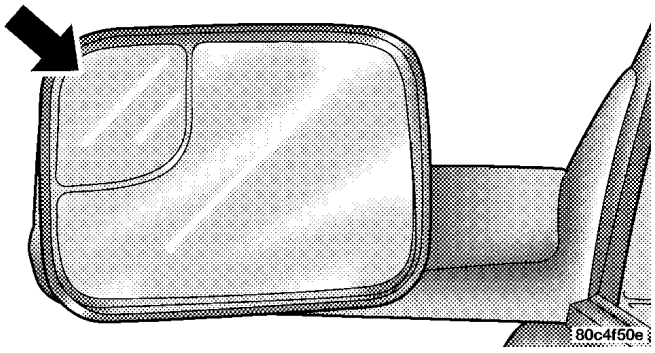
The Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated side view mirrors are activated by pressing the heated grid button, located on the Climate Control panel, with the ignition On. Turning Off the rear window defroster or the ignition will deactivate the Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated side view mirrors feature. These features turn off automatically after 15 minutes have elapsed for the first activation per ignition cycle. Each subsequent activation of these features per ignition cycle will shutoff automatically after 10 minutes have elapsed. To reactivate, simply press the button again.

Trailer Towing Mirrors – If Equipped

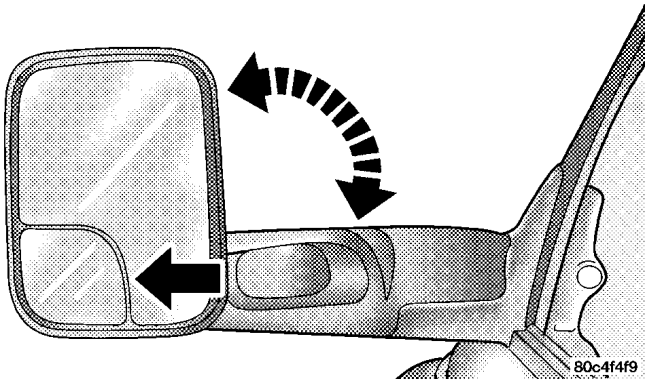
These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped Out or In). A small blindspot mirror is integrated onto the main mirror surface.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Fold the 7 x 10 inch trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.



Blindspot Mirror



Trailer Towing Position

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HANDS–FREE COMMUNICATION (UConnect™) — IF EQUIPPED

NOTE: The sales code RER radio contains an integrated Hands-Free Communication (UConnect™) system. Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for UConnect™ system operating instructions for this radio.

UConnect™ is a voice-activated, hands-free, in- vehicle communications system. UConnect™ allows you to dial a phone number with your cellular phone using simple voice commands (e.g., ″Call" ... "Mike" ..."Work″ or ″Dial" ... "248-555-1212″). Your cellular phone's audio is transmitted through your vehicle's audio system; the system will automatically mute your radio when using the UConnect™ system.

NOTE: The UConnect™ system use requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth ″Hands-Free Profile,″ version 0.96 or higher. See www.chrysler.com/uconnect for supported phones.

UConnect™ allows you to transfer calls between the system and your cellular phone as you enter or exit your vehicle, and enables you to mute the system's microphone for private conversation.

The UConnect™ phonebook enables you to store up to 32 names and four numbers per name. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language. This system is driven through your Bluetooth™ Hands-Free profile cellular phone. UConnect™ features Bluetooth™ technology - the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other without wires or a docking station, so UConnect works no matter where you stow your cellular phone (be it your purse, pocket, or briefcase), as long as

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

your phone is turned on and has been paired to the vehicle's UConnect™ system. The UConnect™ system allows up to seven cellular phones to be linked to system. Only one linked (or paired) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time. The system is available in English, Spanish, or French languages (as equipped).

The rearview mirror contains the microphone for the system and the control buttons that will enable you to access the system.

8105b20d

UConnect™ Switches

The UConnect™ system can be used with any Hands-Free Profile certified Bluetooth™ cellular phone. See www.chrysler.com/uconnect for supported phones. If your cellular phone supports a different profile (e.g.,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Headset Profile), you may not be able to use any UConnect™ features. Refer to your cellular service provider or the phone manufacturer for details.

The UConnect™ system is fully integrated with the vehicle's audio system. The volume of the UConnect™ system can be adjusted either from the radio volume control knob, or from the steering wheel radio control (right switch), if so equipped.

The radio display will be used for visual prompts from the UConnect™ system such as ″CELL″ or caller ID on certain radios.

Operations

Voice commands can be used to operate the UConnect™ system and to navigate through the UConnect™ menu structure. Voice commands are required after most UConnect™ system prompts. You will be prompted for a specific command and then guided through the available options.

- Prior to giving a voice command, one must wait for the voice on beep, which follows the ″Ready″ prompt or another prompt.
- For certain operations, compound commands can be used. For example, instead of saying ″Setup″ and then ″Phone Pairing,″ the following compound command can be said: ″Setup Phone Pairing.″
- For each feature explanation in this section, only the combined form of the voice command is given. You can also break the commands into parts and say each part of the command, when you are asked for it. For example, you can use the combined form voice command ″Phonebook New Entry,″ or you can break the combined form command into two voice commands: ″Phonebook″ and ″New Entry.″ Please remember, the UConnect™ system works best when you talk in a normal conversational tone, as if speaking to some one sitting eight feet away from you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Command Tree
Refer to “Voice Tree” at the end of this section.

Help Command
If you need assistance at any prompt, or if you want to know your options at any prompt, say ″Help″ following the voice on beep. The UConnect™ system will play all the options at any prompt if you ask for help.

To activate the UConnect™ system from idle, simply press the ’Phone’ button and follow audible prompts for directions. All UConnect™ system sessions begin with a press of the ’Phone’ button on the mirror.

Cancel Command
At any prompt, after the voice on beep, you can say ″Cancel″ and you will be returned to the main menu. However, in a few instances the system will take you back to the previous menu.

Pair (Link) UConnect™ System to a Cellular Phone
To begin using your UConnect™ system, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth™ enabled cellular phone.

NOTE: The UConnect™ system use requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth ″Hands-Free Profile,″ version 0.96 or higher. See www.chrysler.com/uconnect for supported phones.

To complete the pairing process, you will need to reference your cellular phone owner’s manual. One of the following vehicle specific websites may also provide detailed instructions for pairing with the brand of phone that you have:

NOTE:
- www.chrysler.com/uconnect
- www.dodge.com/uconnect
- www.jeep.com/uconnect

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following are general phone to UConnect™ System pairing instructions:

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Phone Pairing″ and follow the audible prompts.
- When prompted, after the voice on beep, say ″Pair a Phone″ and follow the audible prompts.
- You will be asked to say a four-digit pin number, which you will later need to enter into your cellular. You can enter any four-digit pin number. You will not need to remember this pin number after the initial pairing process.
- For identification purposes, you will be prompted to give the UConnect™ system a name for your cellular phone. Each cellular phone that is paired should be given a unique phone name.
- You will then be asked to give your cellular phone a priority level between 1 and 7, 1 being the highest priority. You can pair up to seven cellular phones to your UConnect™ system. However, at any given time, only one cellular phone can be in use, connected to your UConnect™ System. The priority allows the UConnect™ system to know which cellular phone to use if multiple cellular phones are in the vehicle at the same time. For example, if priority 3 and priority 5 phones are present in the vehicle, the UConnect™ system will use the priority 3 cellular phone when you make a call. You can select to use a lower priority cellular phone at any time (refer to ″Advanced Phone Connectivity″).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Call/Dial by Saying a Number

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Dial.″
- System will prompt you to say the number you want call.
- For example, you can say "234-567-8901." The phone number that you enter must be of valid length and combination. Based on the Country in which the vehicle was purchased, the UConnect™ limits the user from dialing invalid combination of numbers. For example, in USA, 234-567-890 is nine digits long, which is not a valid USA phone number - the closest valid phone number has ten digits.
- The UConnect™ system will confirm the phone number and then dial. The number will appear in the display of certain radios.

Call/Dial by Saying a Name

- Press the "Phone" button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say "Dial" or Call.″
- System will prompt you to say the name of the person you want call.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say the name of the person you want to call. For example, you can say ″John Doe,″ where John Doe is a previously stored name entry in the UConnect™ phonebook. Refer to ″Add Names to Your UConnect™ Phonebook,″ to learn how to store a name in the phonebook.
- The UConnect™ system will confirm the name and then dial the corresponding phone number, which may appear in the display of certain radios.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Add Names to Your UConnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Adding names to phonebook is recommended when vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the “Phone” button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook New Entry.″
- When prompted, say the name of the new entry. Use of long names helps the voice recognition and is recommended. For example, say ″Robert Smith″ or ″Robert″ instead of ″Bob.″
- When prompted, enter the number designation (e.g., ″Home,″ ″Work,″ ″Mobile,″ or ″Pager″). This will allow you to store multiple numbers for each phonebook entry, if desired.
- When prompted, recite the phone number for the phonebook entry that you are adding.

After you are finished adding an entry into the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to add more phone numbers to the current entry or to return to the main menu.

The UConnect™ system will allow you to enter up to 32 names in the phonebook with each name having up to four associated phone numbers and designations. Each language has a separate 32-name phonebook accessible only in that language.

Edit Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Editing phonebook entries is recommended when vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the ’Phone’ button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook Edit.″

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- You will then be asked for the name of the phonebook entry that you wish to edit.
- Next, choose the number designation (home, work, mobile, or pager) that you wish to edit.
- When prompted, recite the new phone number for the phonebook entry that you are editing.

After you are finished editing an entry in the phonebook, you will be given the opportunities to edit another entry in the phonebook, call the number you just edited, or return to the main menu.

"Phonebook Edit" can be used to add another phone number to a name entry that already exists in the phonebook. For example, the entry John Doe may have a mobile and a home number, but you can add John Doe's work number later using the "Phonebook Edit" feature.

Delete Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Editing phonebook entries is recommended when vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Delete."
- After you enter the Phonebook Delete menu, you will then be asked for the name of the entry that you wish to delete. You can either say the name of a phonebook entry that you wish to delete or you can say "List Names" to hear a list of the entries in the phonebook from which you choose. To select one of the entries from the list, press the "Voice Recognition" button while the UConnect™ system is playing the desired entry and say "Delete."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- After you enter the name, the UConnect™ system will ask you which designation you wish to delete, home, work, mobile, or pager. Say the designation you wish to delete.
- Note that only the phonebook entry in the current language is deleted.

After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted. Note that only the phonebook in the current language is deleted.

Delete All Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Erase All."
- The UConnect™ system will ask you to verify that you wish to delete all the entries from the phonebook.
- After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted.

List All Names in the UConnect™ Phonebook

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook List Names."
- The UConnect™ system will play the names of all the phonebook entries.
- To call one of the names in the list, press the "Voice Recognition' button during the playing of the desired name, and then say "Call." NOTE: the user can also exercise "Edit" or "Delete" operations at this point.
- The UConnect™ system will then prompt you as to number designation you wish to call.
- The selected number will be dialed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phone Call Features

The following features can be accessed through the UConnect™ system if the feature(s) are available on your cellular service plan. For example, if your cellular service plan provides three-way calling, this feature can be accessed through the UConnect™ system. Check with your cellular service provider for the features that you have.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - No Call Currently in Progress

When you receive a call on your cellular phone, the UConnect™ system will interrupt the vehicle audio system, if on, and will ask if you would like to answer the call. To reject the call, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep indicating that the incoming call was rejected.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - Call Currently in Progress

If a call is currently in progress and you have another incoming call, you will hear the same network tones for call waiting that you normally hear when using your cell phone. Press the 'Phone' button to place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call.

NOTE: The UConnect™ system compatible phones in market today do not support rejecting an incoming call when another call is in progress. Therefore, the user can only either answer an incoming call or ignore it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Making a Second Call while Current Call in Progress

To make a second call while you are currently in a call, press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the phone number or phonebook entry you wish to call. The first call will be on hold while the second call is in progress. To go back to the first call, refer to "Toggling Between Calls." To combine two calls, refer to "Conference Call."

Place/Retrieve a Call from Hold

To put a call on hold, press the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep. This indicates that the call is on hold. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep.

Toggling Between Calls

If two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep indicating that the active and hold status of the two calls have switched. Only one call can be placed on hold at one time.

Conference Call

When two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Three-Way Calling

To initiate three-way calling, press the 'Voice Recognition' button while a call is in progress and make a second phone call as described under "Making a Second Call while Current Call in Progress." After the second call has established, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Call Termination

To end a call in progress, momentarily press the ′Phone' button. Only the active call(s) will be terminated and if there is a call on hold, it will become the new active call. If the active call is terminated by the far end, a call on hold may not become active automatically. This is cell phone dependent. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep.

Redial

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Redial.″
- The UConnect™ system will call the last number that was dialed on your cellular phone. Note: this may not be the last number dialed from the UConnect™ system.

Call Continuation

Call continuation is progression of a phone call on UConnect™ system after the vehicle ignition key has been switched to off. Call continuation functionality available on the vehicle can be any one of three types:

- After ignition key is switched off, a call can continue on the UConnect™ system either until the call ends or until the vehicle battery condition dictates cessation of the call on the UConnect™ system and transfer of the call to the mobile phone.
- After ignition key is switched to off, a call can continue on the UConnect™ system for certain duration, after which the call is automatically transferred from the UConnect™ system to the mobile phone.
- An active call is automatically transferred to the mobile phone after ignition key is switched to off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UConnect™ System Features

Language Selection

To change the language that the UConnect™ system is using,

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say the name of the language you wish to switch to (English, Espanol, or Francais, if so equipped).
- Continue to follow the system prompts to complete language selection.

After selecting one of the languages, all prompts and voice commands will be in that language.

NOTE: After every UConnect™ language change operation, only the language specific 32-name phonebook is usable. The paired phone name is not language specific and usable across all languages.

For command translations and alternate commands in supported languages, refer to "Command Translations" at the end of this section.

Emergency Assistance

If you are in an emergency and the mobile phone is reachable:

- Pick up the phone and manually dial the emergency number for your area.

If the phone is not reachable and the UConnect™ system is operational, you may reach the emergency number as follows:

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Emergency″ and the UConnect™ system will instruct the paired cellular phone to call the emergency number. This feature is only supported in the USA.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The emergency number dialed is based on the Country where the vehicle is purchased (911 for USA and Canada and 060 for Mexico). The number dialed may not be applicable with the available cellular service and area.

The UConnect™ system does slightly lower your chances of successfully making a phone call as compared to that for the cell phone directly.

Your phone must be turned on and paired to the UConnect™ system to allow use of this vehicle feature in emergency situations when the cell phone has network coverage and stays paired to the UConnect™ system.

Towing Assistance

If you need towing assistance,

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Towing Assistance.″

NOTE: The Towing Assistance number dialed is based on the Country where the vehicle is purchased (1-800-528-2069 for USA, 1-877-213-4525 for Canada, 55-14-3454 for Mexico city and 1-800-712-3040 for outside Mexico city in Mexico).

Please refer to the 24-Hour "Towing Assistance" coverage details in the Warranty information booklet and on the 24–Hour Towing Assistance Card.

Paging

To learn how to page, refer to ″Working with Automated Systems.″ Paging works properly except for pagers of certain companies which time-out a little too soon to work properly with the UConnect™ system.

Voice Mail Calling

To learn how to access your voice mail, refer to ″Working with Automated Systems.″

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Working with Automated Systems

This method is designed to be used in instances where one generally has to press numbers on the cellular phone keypad while navigating through an automated telephone system.

You can use your UConnect™ system to access a voicemail system or an automated service, such as, paging service or automated customer service. Some services require immediate response selection, in some instances, that may be too quick for use of UConnect™ system.

When calling a number with your UConnect™ system that normally requires you to enter in a touch-tone sequence on your cellular phone keypad, you can push the 'Voice Recognition' button and say the sequence you wish to enter followed by the word ″Send.″ For example, if required to enter your pin number followed with a pound 3 7 4 6 #, you can press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say ″3 7 4 6 # Send.″ Saying a number, or sequence of numbers, followed by ″Send″ is also to be used to navigate through an automated customer service center menu structure and to leave a number on a pager.

Barge In - Overriding Prompts

The 'Voice Recognition' button can be used when you wish to skip part of a prompt and issue your voice recognition command immediately. For example, if a prompt is playing ″Would you like to pair a phone, clear a...,″ you could press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say ″Pair a Phone″ to select that option without having to listen to the rest of the voice prompt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turning Confirmation Prompts On/Off

Turning confirmation prompts off will stop the system from confirming your choices (e.g., the UConnect™ system will not repeat a phone number before you dial it).

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Setup Confirmations.″ The UConnect™ system will play the current confirmation prompt status and you will be given the choice to change it.

Phone and Network Status Indicators

If available on the radio and/or on a premium display such as the instrument panel cluster, and supported by your cell phone, the UConnect™ system will provide notification to inform you of your phone and network status when you are attempting to make a phone call using UConnect™. The status is given for roaming network signal strength, phone battery strength, etc.

Dialing Using the Cellular Phone Keypad

You can dial a phone number with your cellular phone keypad and still use the UConnect™ system (while dialing via the cell phone keypad, the user must exercise caution and take precautionary safety measures). By dialing a number with your paired Bluetooth™ cellular phone, the audio will be played through your vehicle's audio system. The UConnect™ system will work the same as if you dial the number using voice recognition.

NOTE: Certain brands of mobile phones do not send the dial ring to the UConnect™ system to play it on the vehicle audio system, so you will not hear it. Under this situation, after successfully dialing a number, the user may feel that the call did not go through even though the call is in progress. Once your call is answered, you will hear the audio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mute/Un-mute (Mute off)

When you mute the UConnect™ system, you will still be able to hear the conversation coming from the other party, but the other party will not be able to hear you. In order to mute the UConnect™ system:

- Press the 'Voice Recognition' button.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Mute."

In order to un-mute the UConnect™ system:

- Press the 'Voice Recognition' button.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Mute-off."

Information Service

When using AT&T Wireless Service, dialing to phone number "#121," you can access voice activated automated system to receive news, weather, stocks, traffic, etc. related information.

Advanced Phone Connectivity

Transfer Call to and from Cellular Phone

The UConnect™ system allows on going calls to be transferred from your cellular phone to the UConnect™ system without terminating the call. To transfer an ongoing call from your UConnect™ paired cellular phone to the UConnect™ system or vice-versa, press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "Transfer Call."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connect or Disconnect Link Between the UConnect™ System and Cellular Phone

Your cellular phone can be paired with many different electronic devices, but can only be actively ″connected″ with one electronic device at a time.

If you would like to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth™ connection between a UConnect™ paired cellular phone and the UConnect™ system, then follow the instruction described in your cellular phone user's manual.

List Paired Cellular Phone Names

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone pairing".
- When prompted, say ″List Phones.″
- The UConnect™ system will play the phone names of all paired cellular phones in order from the highest to the lowest priority. To "select" or "delete" a paired phone being announced, press the ′Voice recognition' button and say "Select" or "Delete." Also, see the next two sections for an alternate way to "select" or "delete" a paired phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Select another Cellular Phone

This feature allows you to select and start using another phone with the UConnect™ system. The phone must have been previously paired to the UConnect™ system that you want to use it with.

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Select Phone" and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the 'Voice Recognition' button anytime while the list is being played, and then choose the phone that you wish to select.
- The selected phone will be used for the next phone call. If the selected phone is not available, the UConnect™ system will return to using the highest priority phone present in or near (approximately with in 30 feet) the vehicle.

Delete UConnect™ Paired Cellular Phones

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- At the next prompt, say "Delete" and follow the prompts.
- You can also press the 'Voice Recognition' button anytime while the list is being played and then choose the phone you wish to delete.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Things You Should Know About Your UConnect™ System

Voice Training

For users experiencing difficulty with the system recognizing their voice commands or numbers, the UConnect system Voice Training feature may be used. To enter this training mode, follow one of the two procedures: From outside the UConnect mode (e.g. from radio mode),

- Press and hold the 'Voice Recognition' button for 5 seconds until the session begins, or
- Press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say ″Setup, Voice Training″ command.

Repeat the words and phrases when prompted by the UConnect System. For best results, the Voice Training session should be completed when the vehicle is parked, engine running, all windows closed, and the blower fan switched off.

This procedure may be repeated with a new user. The system will adapt to the last trained voice only.

To restore the Voice recognition system to factory default settings, enter the Voice Training session via the above procedure and follow the prompts.

Voice Recognition (VR)

- Always wait for the beep before speaking.
- Speak normally, without pausing, just as you would speak to a person sitting approximately eight (8) feet away from you.
- Make sure that no one other than you is speaking during a voice recognition period.
- Performance is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- low road noise,
- smooth road surface,
- fully closed windows,
- dry weather condition.

- In a convertible vehicle, the system performance may be compromised with roof top down.
- Even though the system is designed for users speaking in North American English, French, and Spanish accents, the system may not always work for some.
- When navigating through an automated system, such as voice mail, or when sending a page at the end of speaking the digit string, make sure to say ″send.″
- Storing names in phonebook when vehicle is not in motion is recommended.
- It is not recommended to store similar sounding names in the UConnect™ phonebook.
- UConnect™ phonebook nametag recognition rate is optimized for the voice of the person who stored the name in the phonebook.
- You can say ″O″ (letter ″O″) for ″0″ (zero). ″800″ must be spoken ″eight-zero-zero.″
- Even though international dialing for most number combinations is supported, some shortcut dialing number combinations may not be supported.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Far End Audio Performance

- Audio quality is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows, and
  - dry weather condition.
  - Operation from driver seat.
- In a convertible vehicle, the system performance may be compromised with roof top down.
- Performance, such as audio clarity, echo, and loudness to a large degree rely on the phone and network, and not the UConnect™ system.
- Echo at far end can sometime be reduced by lowering the in-vehicle audio volume.

Bluetooth Communication Link

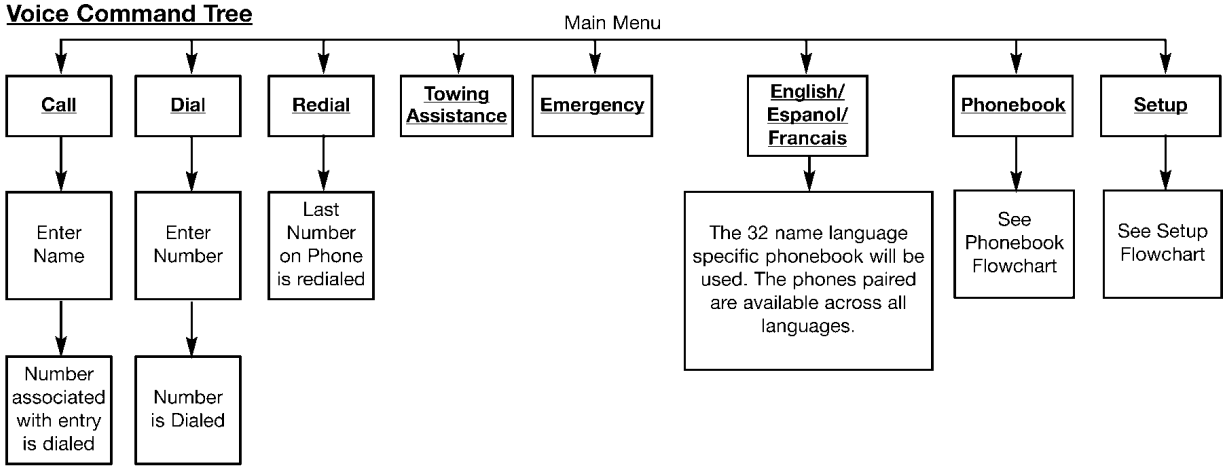
Occasionally, Cellular phones have been found to lose connection to the UConnect™ system. When this happens, the connection can generally be re-established by switching the phone off/on. Your cell phone is recommended to remain in Bluetooth ″on″ mode.

Power-Up

After switching the ignition key from OFF to either ON or ACC position, or after a reset, you must wait at least five (5) seconds prior to using the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Voice Command Tree

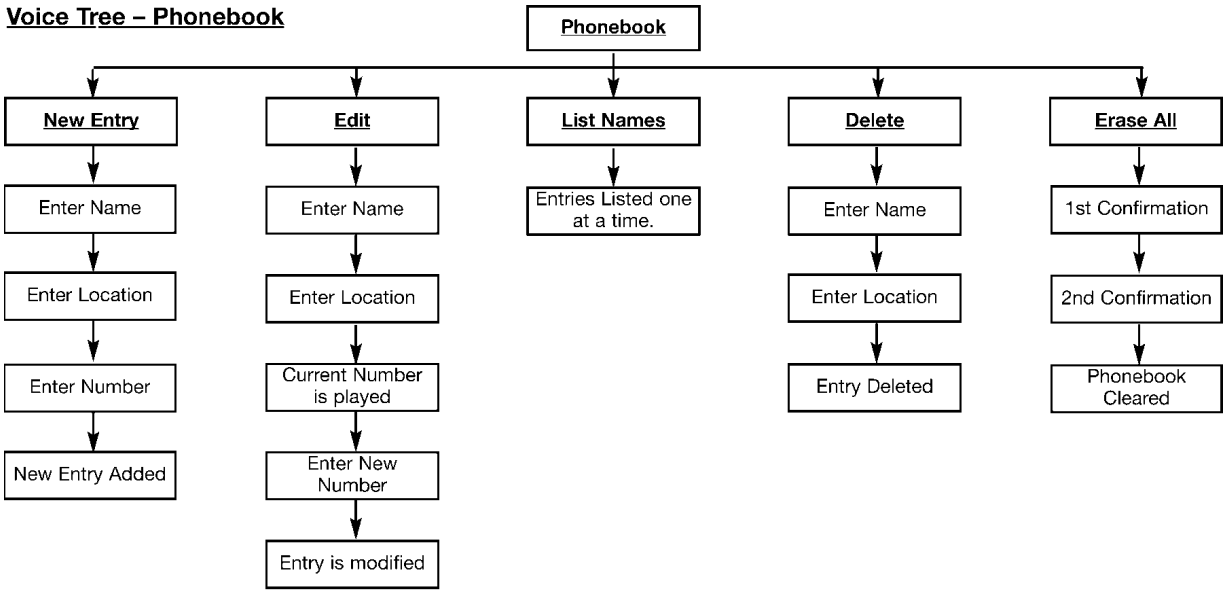


Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

819402e8

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

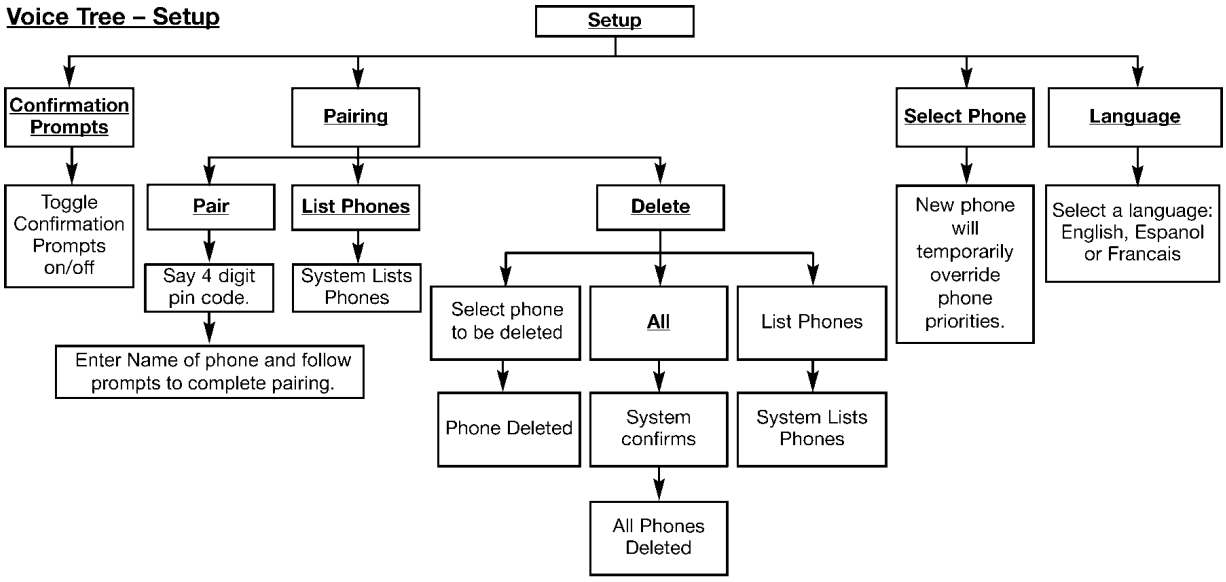
Voice Tree – Phonebook



Note: Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.

8131b294

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.** 819402e4

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

North American English	
Primary	Alternate(s)
Zero	
One	
Two	
Three	
Four	
Five	
Six	
Seven	
Eight	
Nine	
Star (*)	
Plus (+)	
Pound (#)	
Add Location	
All	

Call	
Cancel	
Confirmation Prompts	
Continue	
Delete	
Dial	
Edit	
Emergency	
English	
Erase All	
Espanol	
Francais	
Help	
Home	
Language	
List names	
List phones	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mobile	
Mute	
Mute off	
New entry	
No	
Pager	
Pair a phone	
Phone pairing	Pairing
Phonebook	Phone book
Previous	
Record again	
Redial	
Return to main menu	Return. Main menu
Select phone	Select
Send	
Set up	Phone settings / Phone set up
Towing assistance	
Transfer call	
Try again	
Voice training	
Work	
Yes	

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEATS

The seating options available in this truck are the result of extensive customer research and evaluations.

Seats are also a primary part of the Occupant Restraint (protection) System of the vehicle. They need to be used properly for safe operation of the vehicle.

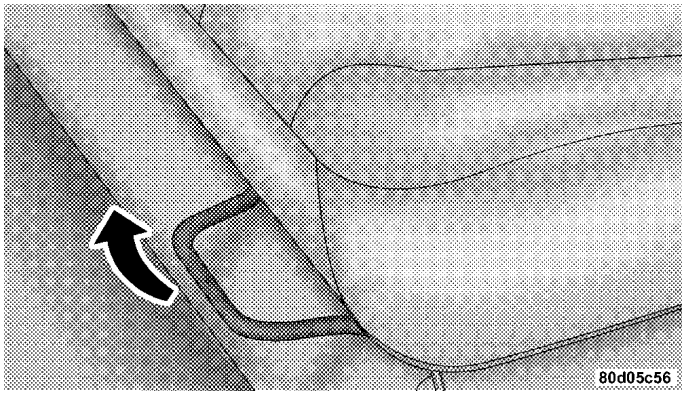
WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

40-20-40 Front Seat



Manual Seat Adjuster

As the name implies, the seat is divided into 3 segments. The outboard seat portions are each 40% of the total width of the seat. The back of the center portion (20%) easily folds down to provide an armrest/center storage compartment (if equipped).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

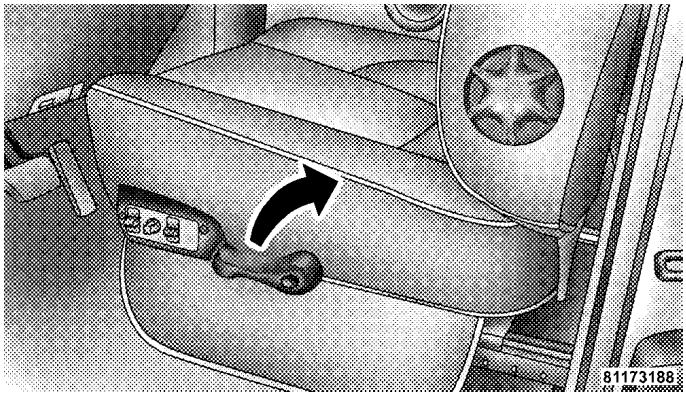
Each outboard seat is independently adjustable forward or rearward and is equipped with a back recliner. The manual forward or rearward seat adjustment handle is found at the front edge of each seat cushion. Pull up on the handle and slide the seat to get the most comfortable position.

WARNING!

Adjusting a seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The sudden movement of the seat could cause you to lose control. The seat belt might not be properly adjusted and you could be injured. Adjust any seat only while the vehicle is parked.

Reclining Seats

The recliner handle is on the outside of the seat cushion. Pull up on the handle, as shown, to release the seat back and adjust for comfort.



Manual Recline Lever

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

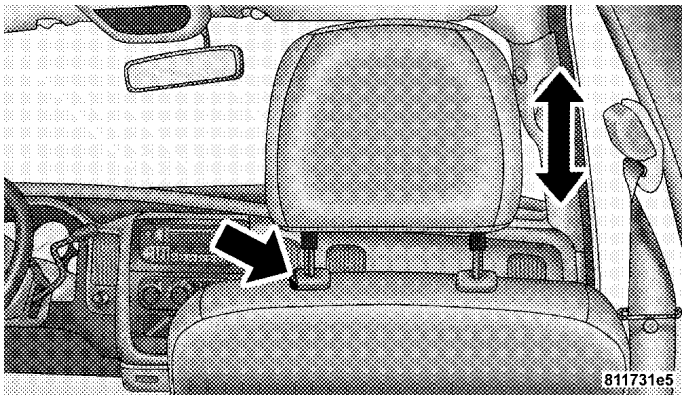
WARNING!

You can be seriously, even fatally, injured riding in a seat with the seatback reclined. Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. If you ride in this position, the shoulder harness will no longer be restraining you. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt and receive serious or fatal injuries. Recline in a seat only when the vehicle is parked.

Adjustable Head Restraints

Head restraints can reduce the risk of neck injury in the event of impact from the rear. Pull up or push down on the restraints so that the upper edge is as high as practical, at least to the level of the ears.

To lower the head restraint, push in the button and then push down on the head restraint.

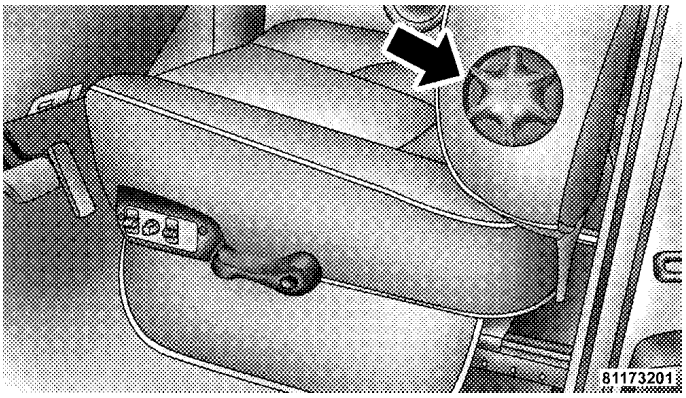


Head Restraints

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Rotary Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped

Rotating the lumbar control knob on the left side of the driver's seatback and on the right side of the passenger's seatback increases or decreases the lumbar (lower back) support.

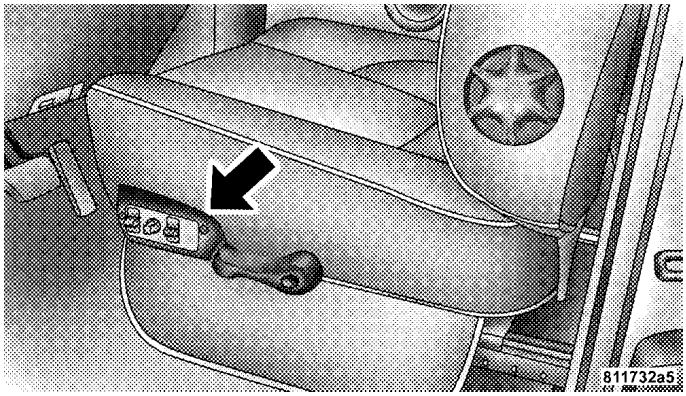


Manual Lumbar Adjustment

Power Seats — If Equipped

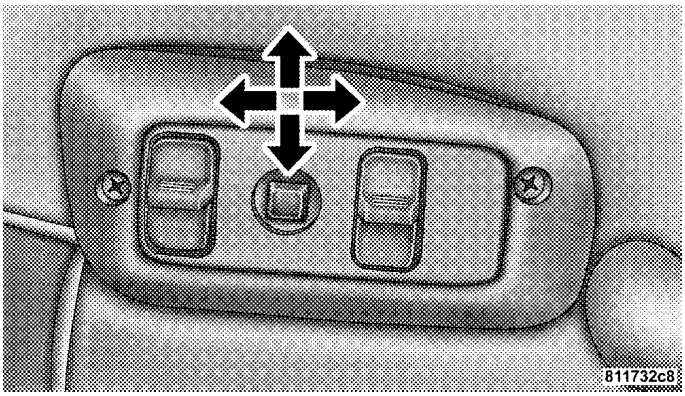
CAUTION!

Don't put anything under a power seat. It may cause damage to the seat controls.



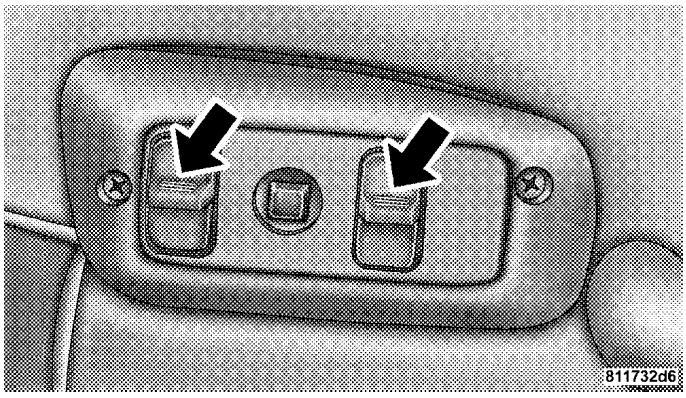
Power Seat Switch

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Up, Down, Forward, and Rearward

The power seat controls are on the outboard side of the front seat cushions. Three switches control the seat movement. The four-way switch in the center can be moved forward or backwards to get the most comfortable position. The same switch can be moved up and down to control seat height. Change the seat angle by using the two toggle switches, tilting it up or down.

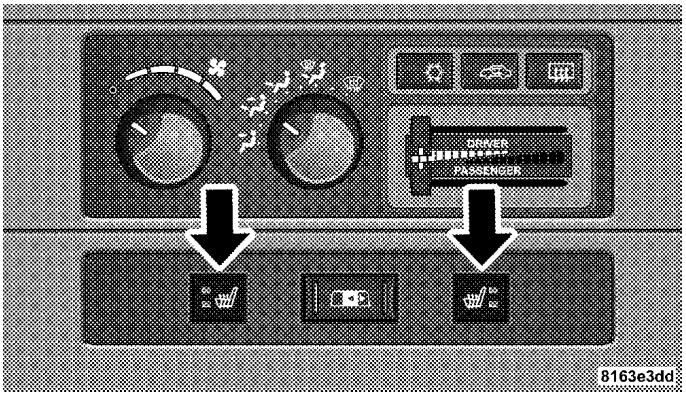


Tilt Adjustment

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Heated Seats — If Equipped

The heated seat switches are located in the instrument panel under the climate controls.



Heated Seat Switches

Each heated seat switch has two settings (HI and LOW). Press the switch once to obtain High heat level, then press the switch again to obtain Low heat level. Pressing the switch a third time will turn the heated seats OFF. If you do not purposefully turn the switch OFF, the seat heating level will automatically change to the next lower level, or OFF. The High heat level operates for 30 minutes (approximate), the Low heat level operates for 30 minutes (approximate). The seat heat will also turn OFF when the ignition is turned OFF. Both of the indicators ON identifies High heat level. The lower indicator On only, identifies Low heat level. Flashing indicator lights on the switch indicate that the Heated Seat System needs servicing.

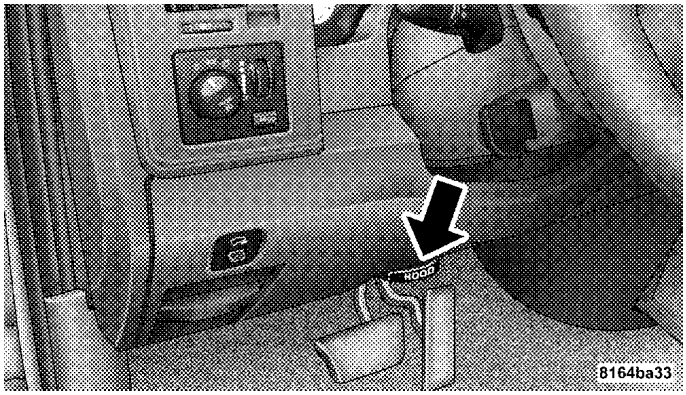
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.

Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat.

TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD

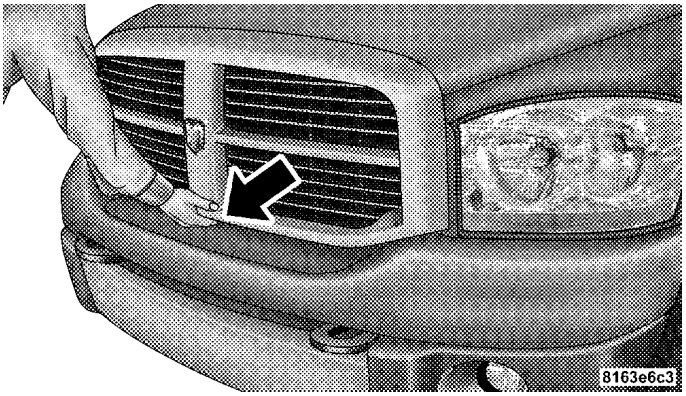


Hood Release Lever

To open the hood, two latches must be released. First pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel. Once the hood is released you must reach into the opening beneath the center of the grille and push up the latch to release the safety catch before raising the hood.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.



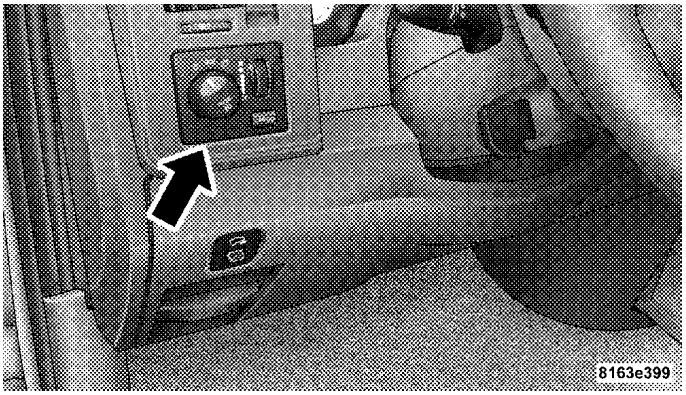
Secondary Latch

WARNING!

If the hood is not fully latched, it could fly up when the vehicle is moving and block your forward vision. Be sure all hood latches are latched fully before driving.

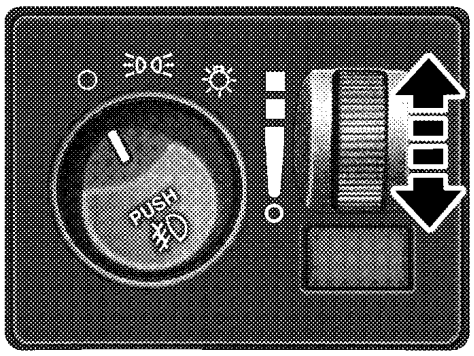
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIGHTS



Headlight Switch Location

Interior Lights



Dimmer Control

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the right side of the switch) is rotated to the upward detent position, or if equipped, when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the key fob. When a door is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer control all the way down to the OFF detent will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the ″Party″ mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control up (brighter) or down (dimmer). When the headlights are ON you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control up until you hear a click. This feature is termed the "Parade" mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

Club Cab/Quad Cab models may have an optional switched dome lamp that may be operated by pressing the lens.

Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, Load Shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is off and any door is left ajar for 10 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated upwards for 10 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

If the headlamps remain on while the ignition is cycled off, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after 8 minutes. If the headlamps are turned on and left on for 8 minutes while the ignition is off, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

NOTE: Battery Saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

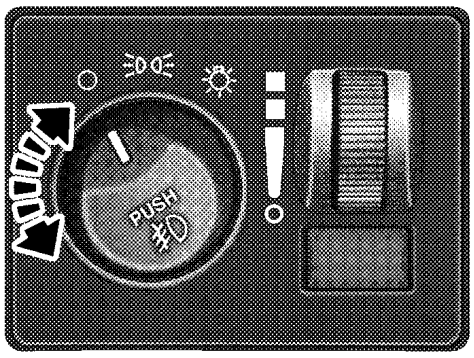
Headlamp Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlamp delay that will leave the headlamps on for 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlamp switch is on, and then the headlamp switch is cycled off. Headlamp delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlamp switch ON then OFF or by turning the ignition ON.

The Headlight delay time is programmable on vehicles equipped with the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC). For details, refer to “Headlamp Off Delay”, under “Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features),” under “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)” in Section 3 of this manual.

Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights

When the headlight switch is rotated to the first position, the parking lights, taillights, side marker lights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are all turned on. The headlights will turn ON when the switch is rotated to the second position.



81948502

Light Switch Rotation

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only and Fleet Vehicles)

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except park. This provides a constant ″Lights ON″ condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied the Daytime Running Lights will turn off. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle will turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate

Lights-on Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, or cargo lights are left on, after the ignition is turned off, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

Fog Lights — If Equipped

The foglights are turned ON by placing the headlight rotary control in the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control. The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are ON or when the vehicle headlights are ON low

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will turn off when the switch is pushed a second time, when the headlight switch is rotated to the OFF position, or the high beam is selected.

Multifunction Control Lever

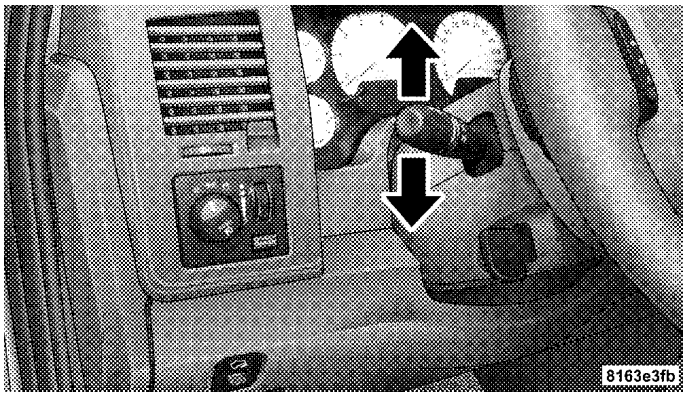
The multifunction control lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

Turn Signals

Move the lever up or down to signal a right-hand or left-hand turn.

The arrow on either side of the instrument cluster flashes to indicate the direction of the turn, and proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights. If a defective bulb or wiring circuit is detected for the turn signal system, the arrow indicators will flash at a faster rate. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the switch or indicator lamp is defective.

You can signal a lane change by moving the lever partially up or down.



Turn Signal Lever

Turn Signal Auto-Mode

Tap the multi-function control lever once and the turn signal (left or right) will flash 3 times, and automatically turn off.

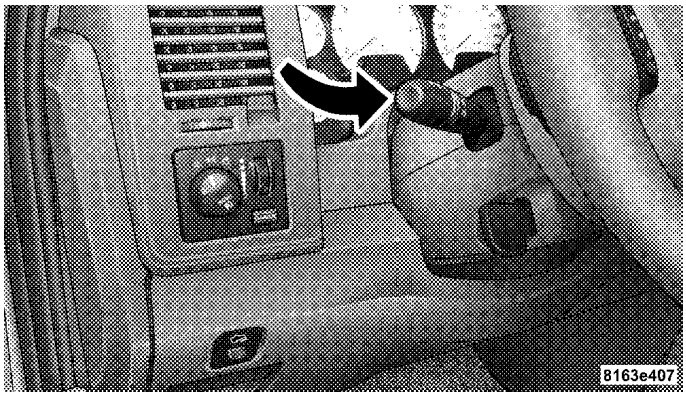
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passing Light

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on until the lever is released.

High Beam / Low Beam Select Switch

Pull the multifunction control lever fully toward the steering wheel to switch the headlights from HIGH or LOW beam.

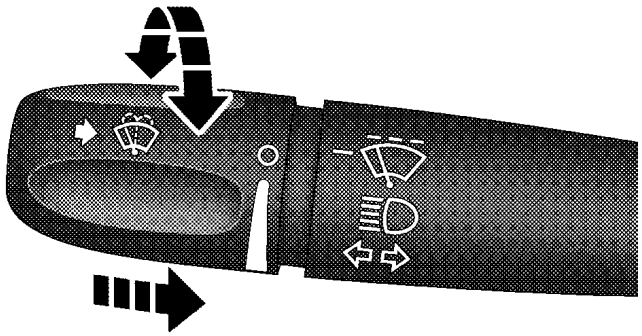


High Beam / Low Beam

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

Windshield Wipers



815be820

Windshield Wiper / Washer Switch

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction control lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.

Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the LOW continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 15 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every 2 seconds. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km) or less.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to an accident. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with defroster before and during windshield washer use.

Windshield Washers

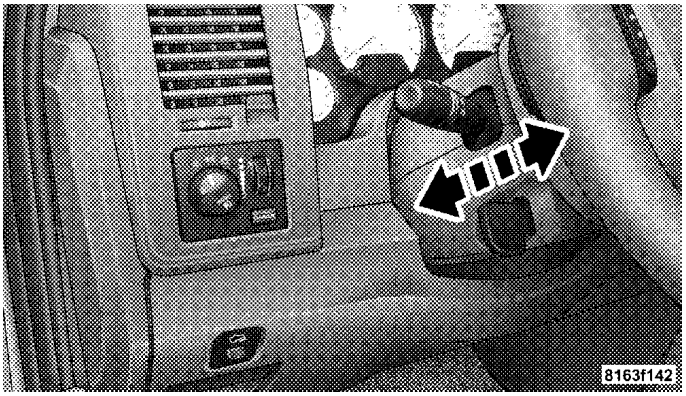
To use the washer, push in on the washer knob on the end of the multifunction control lever and hold while spray is desired. If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed, for a period greater than 1 second, while in the OFF position, the wiper will wipe approximately three wipes, after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TILT STEERING COLUMN

To tilt the column, pull rearward on the lever below the turn signal control and move the wheel up or down, as desired. Push the lever forward to lock the column firmly in place.



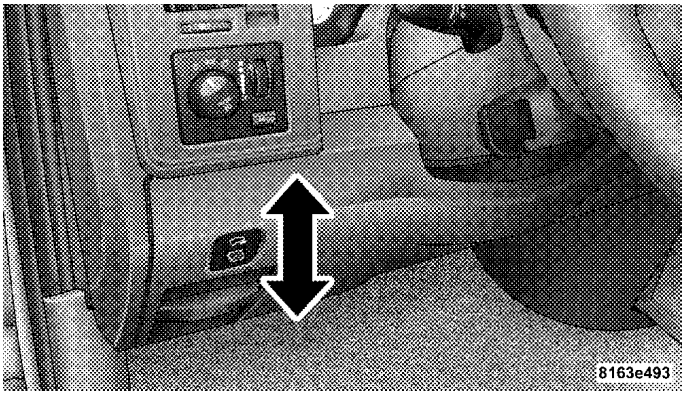
Tilt Steering Control Lever

WARNING!

Tilting the steering column while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Without a stable steering column, you could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident. Adjust the column only while the vehicle is stopped. Be sure it is locked before driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED



Adjustable Pedals Switch

The power adjustable accelerator and brake pedals allow the driver to establish a comfortable position relative to the steering wheel and pedals.

Adjustment

1. Position the driver seat so that you are at least 10 inches (254 mm) away from the airbag located in the center of the steering wheel.
2. Fasten and adjust the seatbelts.
3. Move the adjustable pedal switch, located to the left of the steering column near the parking brake release, in the direction you desire to move the pedals.
4. The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in R (Reverse) or when the Speed Control is SET.

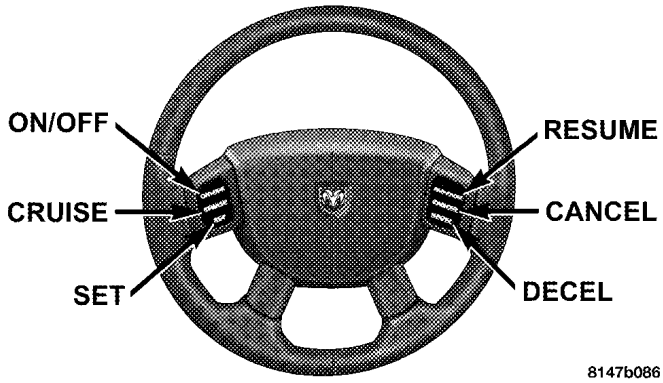
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

When engaged, this device takes over accelerator operation at speeds greater than 35 mph (56 km/h). The controls are mounted on the steering wheel.



NOTE: The Electronic Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple speed control switch buttons (i.e. SET and CANCEL) are operated simultaneously in order to ensure proper operation. The system can be reactivated by pushing the speed control switch ON/OFF button and re-establishing the desired vehicle SET speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button to the ON position. An indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system is on.

To Set At A Desired Speed

When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press and release the SET button. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, normal braking, clutch pressure while slowing the vehicle, or pressing the CANCEL button will deactivate speed control without erasing the memory. Pushing the ON/OFF button to the OFF position or turning off the ignition erases the memory.

WARNING!

Leaving the Speed Control ON when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system to cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you aren't using it.

To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push and release the RESUME button. Resume can be used at any speed above 30 mph (50 km/h).

To Vary The Speed Setting

When the speed control is on, speed can be increased by pressing and holding the ACCEL button. When the button is released, a new set speed will be established.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tapping the ACCEL button once will result in a 2 mph (3km/h) speed increase. Each time the button is tapped, speed increases so that tapping the button three times will increase speed by 6 mph (10 km/h), etc.

Tapping the DECEL button once will result in a 1 mph (2 km/h) speed decrease. Each time the button is tapped, speed will decrease. For example, tapping the button 3 times will decrease the speed by 3 mph (5 km/h), etc.

To decrease speed while the speed control is on, press and hold the DECEL button. Release the button when the desired speed is reached, and the new speed will be set.

To Accelerate For Passing

Depress the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

NOTE: When driving uphill, at elevations above 2,000 ft. (610 meters), or when the vehicle is heavily loaded (especially when towing) the vehicle may slow below the SET speed. If the vehicle speed drops below 35 mph (56 km/h), the speed control will automatically disengage. If this happens, you can push down on the accelerator pedal to maintain the desired speed.

Vehicles equipped with a 6–speed manual transmission should be operated in 4th or 5th gear under the above conditions.

WARNING!

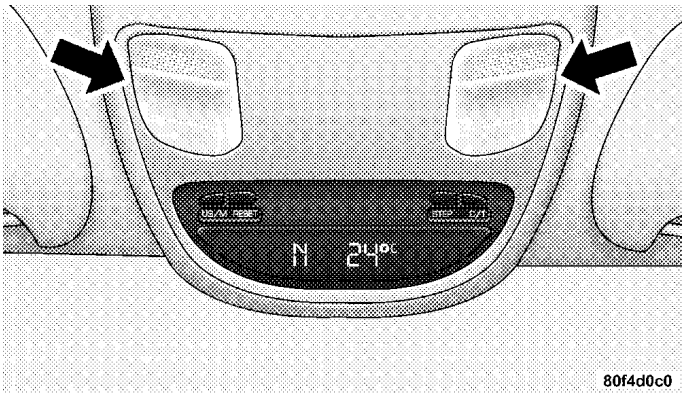
Speed Control can be dangerous where the system can't maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control. An accident could be the result. Don't use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, or slippery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OVERHEAD CONSOLE WITH COMPASS/TEMPERATURE MINI-TRIP COMPUTER — IF EQUIPPED

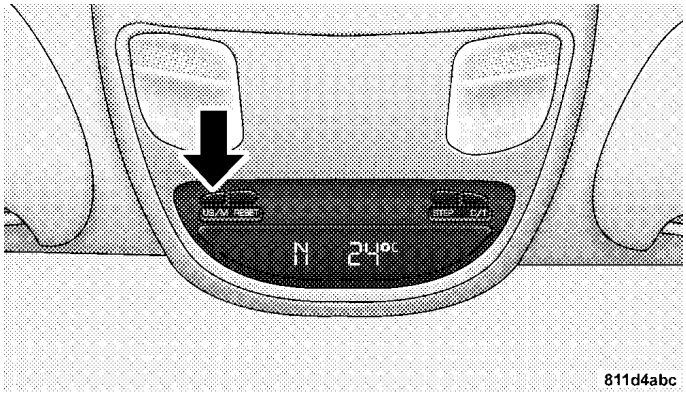
This optional overhead console consists of the following:

- Courtesy Lights
- Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer (CMTC)



This overhead console allows you to choose between a compass/temperature display and one of four trip conditions being monitored.

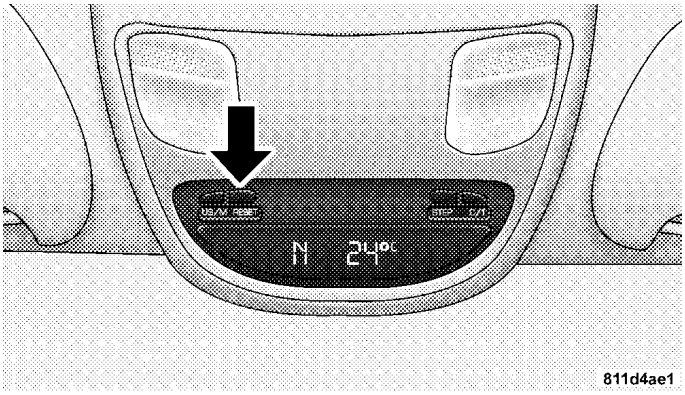
US/M Button



Use this button to change the display from U.S. to metric measurement units.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RESET Button

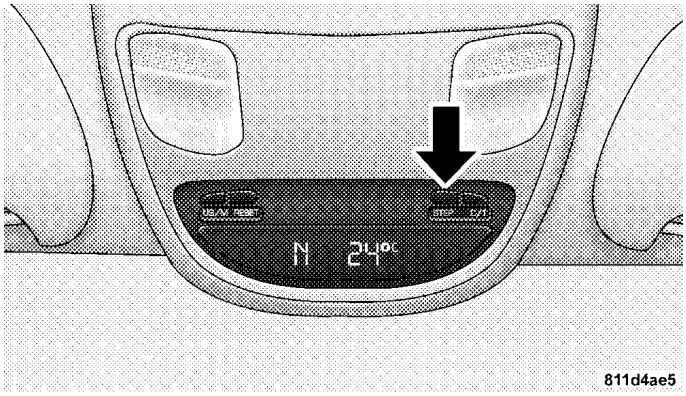


Use this button to reset the following displays:
Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)
Trip Odometer (ODO)
Elapsed time (ET)

Global Reset

If the RESET button is pressed twice within 2 seconds while in any of the 3 resettable displays (AVG ECO, ODO, ET), the Global Reset will reset all 3 displays.

Step Button



Use this button to choose or cycle through the four trip conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)

Shows the average fuel economy since the last reset. Average fuel economy is a running average of the amount of fuel used and the distance the vehicle has traveled.

When the fuel economy is reset, the display will momentarily blank. Then, the history will be erased, and the AVERAGING WILL CONTINUE FROM WHERE IT WAS BEFORE THE RESET. The reset value is based on a minimal amount of fuel used and the distance traveled from the previous drive cycle. The display **may take several miles** for this value to change dependent upon driving habits.

Distance To Empty (DTE)

Shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank. This estimated distance is determined by weighted average of the instantaneous and average fuel economy, according to the current fuel tank level. This is not resettable

NOTE: Significant changes in driving style or vehicle loading will greatly affect the actual drivable distance of the vehicle, regardless of the DTE displayed value.

When the DTE value is less than 30 miles estimated driving distance, the DTE display will change to an alternating test display of “LO” and “FUEL”. This display will continue until the vehicle runs out of fuel. Adding a significant amount of fuel to the vehicle will turn off the “LO FUEL” text and a new DTE value will be displayed, based on the current values in the DTE calculation and the current fuel tank level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: It is possible for DTE to display "LO FUEL" before the low fuel warning light turns on in the instrument cluster. This could occur because low fuel warning is set to a specified fuel tank volume and DTE is an estimated distance calculation based on fuel economy and remaining fuel tank volume.

Ram fuel tank volumes are as follows:

- 52 gallons - Standard rear tank
- 22 gallons - Optional Midship Tank

Trip Odometer (ODO)

NOTE: The maximum value is approximately 6000 miles. Then the trip odometer must be reset in order to update the trip odometer miles.

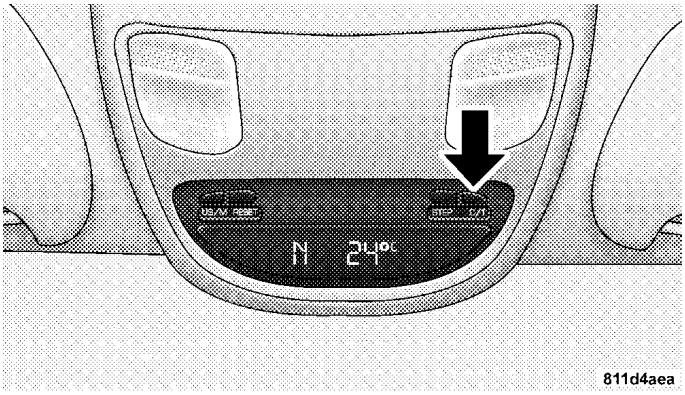
This display shows the distance traveled since the last reset. Resetting of this screen will cause the trip odometer to change to Zero.

Elapsed Time (ET)

This display shows the accumulated ignition ON time since the last reset. Resetting the Elapsed Time will cause the display to change to Zero.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

C/T Button



Use this button to select a readout of the outside temperature and one of eight compass headings that indicate the direction in which the vehicle is facing.

WARNING!

Even if the display still reads a few degrees above 32°F (0°C), the road surface may be icy, particularly in woods or on bridges. Drive carefully under such conditions to prevent an accident and possible personal injury or property damage.

Automatic Compass Calibration

This compass is self-calibrating which eliminates the need to manually set the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the CAL symbol will be displayed.

After completing up to three 360° turns, with the vehicle traveling less than 5 mph (8 km/h), in an area free from large metal or metallic objects, the CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

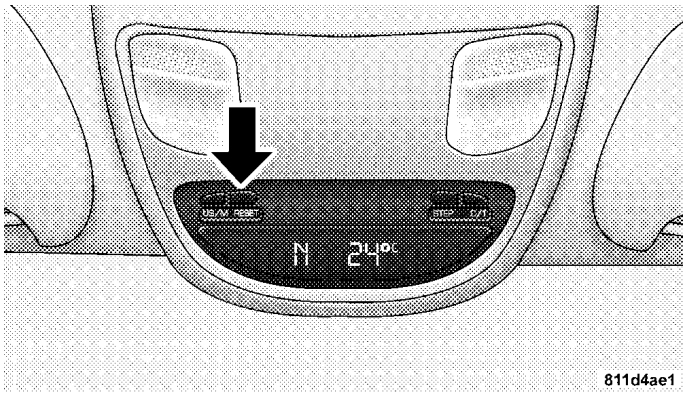
Manual Compass Calibration

NOTE: To ensure proper compass calibration, make sure the compass variance is properly set before manually calibrating the compass.

If the compass appears erratic and the CAL symbol does not appear, you must manually put the compass into the "Calibration" mode.

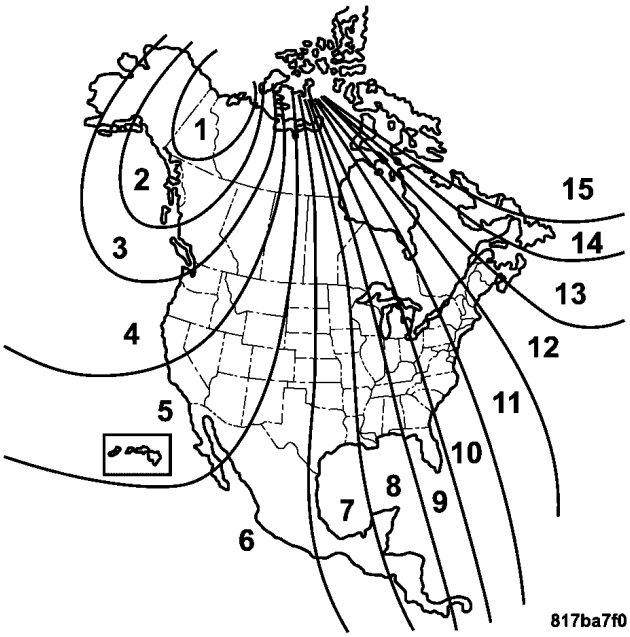
Recalibrating The Compass

Turn on the ignition and set the display to "Compass/ Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button to change the display between VAR (compass variance) and CAL (compass calibration) modes. When the CAL symbol is displayed slowly drive the vehicle 5 mph in a complete 360° circle in an area free from large metal objects or power lines. The CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.



Compass Variance is the difference between magnetic north and geographic north. In some areas of the country, the difference between magnetic and geographic north is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set according to the Compass Variance Map.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



NOTE: The default for the compass variance is zone 8.

To set the variance: Turn the ignition ON and set the display to "Compass/Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button approximately five seconds. The last variance zone number will be displayed. Press the STEP button to select the new variance zone and press the RESET button to resume normal operation.

Outside Temperature

Because the ambient temperature sensor is located underhood, engine temperature can influence the displayed temperature, therefore, temperature readings are slowly updated when the vehicle speed is below 20 mph (30 km/h) or during stop and go driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OVERHEAD CONSOLE WITH ELECTRONIC VEHICLE INFORMATION CENTER (EVIC) — DIESEL ONLY

The overhead console contains dome/reading lights, and an Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC).

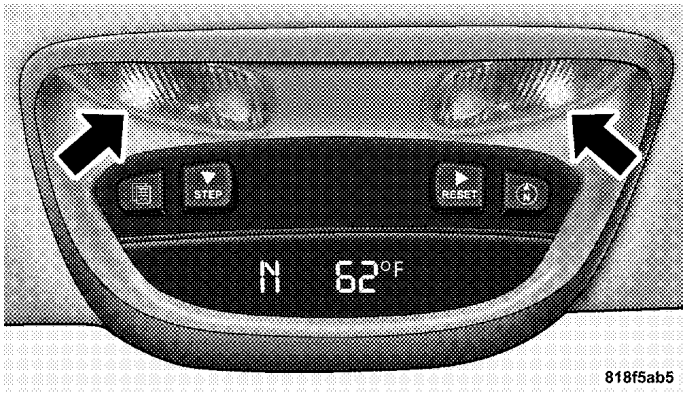
Dome/Reading Lights

Located in the overhead console are two dome/reading lights.

The dome/reading lights illuminate when a door is opened or when the interior lights are turned on by rotating the dimmer control located on the Headlight Switch.

The reading lights are activated by pressing on the recessed area of the corresponding lens.

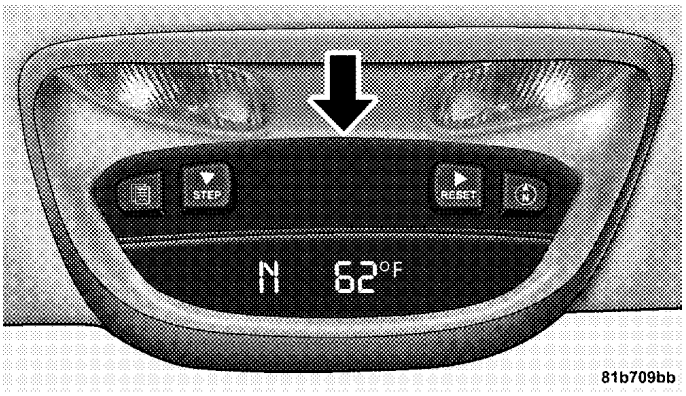
NOTE: The dome/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pressed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle.



Dome/Reading Lights

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) — If Equipped



Overhead Console with EVIC

Pressing the menu button will change the display to one of the following features:

Trip Functions

Pressing the STEP button allows you to scroll through one of the following Trip Function features:

- TRIP – Shows the total distance traveled since the last reset. To reset the TRIP function, press and hold the RESET button.
- ELAPSED TIME – Shows the total elapsed time of travel since the last reset. Elapsed time will increment when the ignition switch is in the ON/RUN or START positions.
- UNIT IN US/METRIC – Press the RESET button to toggle between US and METRIC.
- AVG. MPG – Shows the average fuel economy since the last reset. When the fuel economy is reset, the display will show dashes for two seconds. Then the history information will be erased, and the averaging will continue from the last fuel average reading before

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the reset. (Example: If your Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) displays 18 AVG. MPG and the RESET button is pressed, the previous averaging history will be erased and the display will return to the 18 AVG. MPG, not to 0 AVG. MPG). The display may take several miles for the value to change dependent upon driving habits.

- MI TO EMPTY (Distance To Empty) – Shows the estimated distance that can be traveled with the fuel remaining in the tank. This estimated distance is determined by a weighted average of fuel economy, according to the current fuel tank level. MI TO EMPTY cannot be reset through the RESET button.

NOTE: Significant changes in driving style or vehicle loading will greatly affect the actual drivable distance of the vehicle, regardless of the DTE displayed value.

- When the DTE value is less than 30 miles (48 km) estimated driving distance, the DTE display will change to a text display of ″LOW FUEL.″ This display will continue until the vehicle runs out of fuel. Adding a significant amount of fuel to the vehicle will turn off the ″LOW FUEL″ text and a new DTE value will display.

System Status (EVIC Displays)

When the appropriate conditions exist, the Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) displays the following messages:

- TURN SIGNALS ON (with a continuous warning chime)
- PERSONAL SETTINGS NOT AVAILABLE – Vehicle Not in Park
- LEFT/RIGHT FRONT DOOR AJAR (one or more, with a single chime if speed is above 1 mph)
- LEFT/RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR (one or more, with a single chime if speed is above 1 mph)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- DOOR(S) AJAR (with a single chime if vehicle is in motion)
- LOW WASHER FLUID (with a single chime)
- OIL CHANGE REQUIRED (with a single chime)
- CATALYST FULL SEE OWNER MANUAL
- CATALYST STAT lllllll 90%
- CATALYST FULL SERVICE REQUIRED
- SERVICE AIR FILTER
- SERVICE CCV FILTER
- COOLANT LOW (with a single chime)

OIL CHANGE REQUIRED — If Equipped

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The "Oil Change Required" message will flash in the EVIC display for approximately 10 seconds after a single chime has sounded to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate dependent upon your personal driving style.

Unless reset, this message will continue to display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position. To turn off the message temporarily, press and release the Menu button. To reset the oil change indicator system (after performing the scheduled maintenance) refer to the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position **(Do not start the engine).**
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal slowly three times within 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF/LOCK position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary repeat this procedure.

Personal Settings (Customer Programmable Features)

Personal Settings allows the driver to set and recall features when the transmission is in PARK. If the transmission is not in PARK the EVIC will display NOT AVAILABLE and VEHICLE NOT IN PARK.

Press and release the menu button until the Personal Settings displays on the EVIC.

Use the STEP button to display one of the following:

- "LANGUAGE" – When in this display you may select one of three languages for all display nomenclature, including the trip functions. Press the RESET button while in this display to select English, Espanol, or Francais. Then, as you continue, the information will display in the selected language.
- "AUTO DOOR LOCKS > YES" – When ON is selected, all doors will lock automatically when the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 mph (24 km/h). To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "AUTO UNLOCK ON EXIT > YES" – When ON is selected, all doors will unlock when the vehicle is stopped and the transmission is in the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position and the driver's door is opened. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "RKE UNLOCK DRV DR 1st" – When **DRV DR 1st** is selected, only the driver's door will unlock on the first press of the remote keyless entry unlock button. When Driver Door 1st Press is selected, you must press of the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

remote keyless entry unlock button twice to unlock the passenger's doors. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "DRV DR 1st " appears.

- "RKE UNLOCK ALL DR 1ST" – When All **ALL DR 1ST** is selected, all of the doors will unlock on the first press of the remote keyless entry unlock button. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "All DR 1st" appears.
- "SOUND HORN W/LOCK > YES" – When ON is selected, a short horn sound will occur when the remote keyless entry "Lock" button is pressed. This feature may be selected with or without the flash lights on lock/unlock feature. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "FLASH LIGHTS w/LOCK > YES" – When ON is selected, the front and rear turn signals will flash when the doors are locked or unlocked with the remote keyless entry transmitter. This feature may be selected with or without the sound horn on lock feature selected. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "ON" or "OFF" appears.
- "HEAD LAMP OFF DELAY > 0 SEC" – When this feature is selected, the driver can choose to have the headlights remain on for 0, 30, 60, or 90 seconds when exiting the vehicle. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "0," "30," "60," or "90" appears.
- "KEY OFF POWER DELAY > OFF" – When this feature is selected, the power window switches, radio, hands–free system (if equipped), and power outlets will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off. Opening a vehicle door will cancel this feature. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "Off," "45 sec.," "5 min.," "10 min appears.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- "ILLUMINATED APRCH > OFF" – When this feature is selected, the headlights will activate and remain on for up to 90 seconds when the doors are unlocked with the remote keyless entry transmitter. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "OFF," "30 sec.," "60 sec.," or "90 sec." appears.

NOTE: If this feature is enabled, the headlamps will be on during the engine pre-heat and cold crank; therefore, it is recommended that the feature be disabled when overnight ambient temperature is at or below 20F (-7C) to prevent excessive drain on batteries during cold cranking.

- "UNIT IN > US/METRIC" – The EVIC, odometer can be changed between English and Metric units of measure. To make your selection, press and release the RESET button until "US" or "METRIC" appears.
- "COMPASS VARIANCE > 8" – Press the RESET button to change the compass variance setting. Refer to Compass Variance, in this section for additional information.
- "COMPASS CALIBRATE > YES" – Press the RESET button to calibrate the compass. Refer to Manual Compass Calibration, in this section for additional information.

Compass/Temperature Button

Pressing the Compass/Temperature button will return the display to the normal compass/temperature display.

NOTE: Temperature accuracy can be effected from heat soak. For best accuracy, the vehicle should be driven at a speed greater than 25 mph (40 km/h) for several minutes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Compass Calibration

This compass is self-calibrating, which eliminates the need to set the compass manually. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the EVIC will display "CAL" until the compass is calibrated. You may also calibrate the compass by completing one or more 360° turns (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects) until the "CAL" message displayed in the EVIC turns off. The compass will now function normally.

Manual Compass Calibration

If the compass appears erratic and the "CAL" message does not appear in the EVIC display, you must put the compass into the Calibration Mode manually as follows:

1. **Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.**
2. **Press the menu button** until Personal Settings is displayed.
3. **Press the STEP button** until "Calibrate Compass YES" is displayed.
4. **Press and release the RESET button**

to start the calibration. The message "CAL" will display in the EVIC.

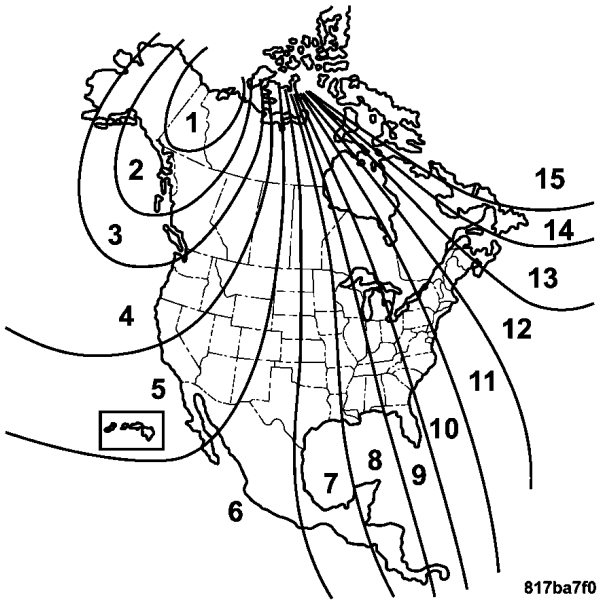
5. Slowly drive the vehicle 5 mph in a complete 360° circle (in an area free from large metal or metallic objects) until the "CAL" message turns off. The compass will now function normally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass Variance

Compass Variance is the difference between magnetic North and Geographic North. In some areas of the country, the difference between magnetic and geographic North is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set using the following procedure:

NOTE: Magnetic materials should be kept away from the overhead console. This is where the compass sensor is located.



Compass Variance Map

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. **Turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position.**

2. **Press the menu button** until Personal Settings is displayed.

3. **Press the STEP button** until "Compass Variance" is displayed.

4. **Press and release RESET button** until the proper variance zone is selected according to the map.

5. **Press and release the compass button** to exit.

ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

The auxiliary electrical outlet can provide power for in cab accessories designed for use with the standard "cigar lighter" plug. The outlet is located in the instrument panel below and to the right of the Climate Control Panel. A cap is attached to the outlet base indicating "Power Outlet" 12V-20A.

There is an additional Power Outlet inside the center console of vehicles equipped with 40/20/40, or Bucket front seats. There is also a Power Outlet located on the rear of the center console for Quad Cab or Mega Cab vehicles (only) equipped with bucket seats.

The outlet(s) has/have a fused direct feed from the battery so it/they receive power whether the ignition is ON or OFF.

All accessories connected to this/these outlet(s) should be removed or turned OFF when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.

NOTE: If desired, all of the power outlets can be converted by your authorized dealer to provide power with the ignition switch in the ON position only.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Electrical Outlet Use With Engine Off

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e. cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

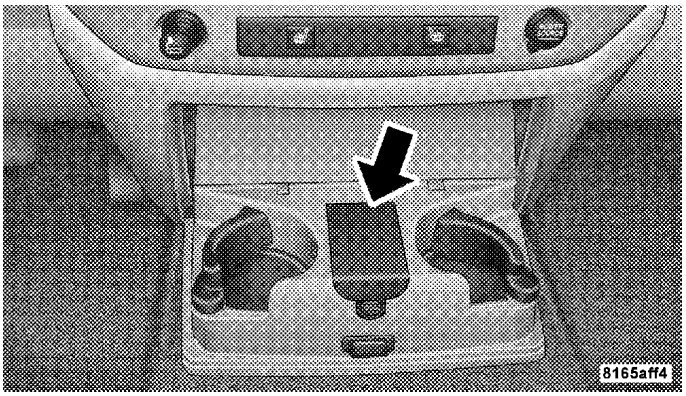
CIGAR LIGHTER AND ASH RECEIVER

The removable ash receiver is located in the instrument panel cup holder tray.

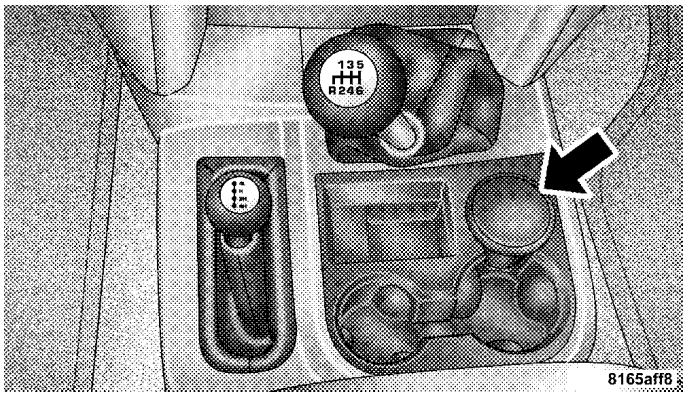
The cigar lighter is located on the instrument panel, above and to the left of the ash receiver.

As a child safety precaution, the lighter only operates with the ignition switch ON. It heats when pushed in and pops out automatically when ready for use. **To preserve the heating element, do not hold the lighter in the heating position.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Ash Tray Automatic Transmission



Ash Tray Manual Transmission

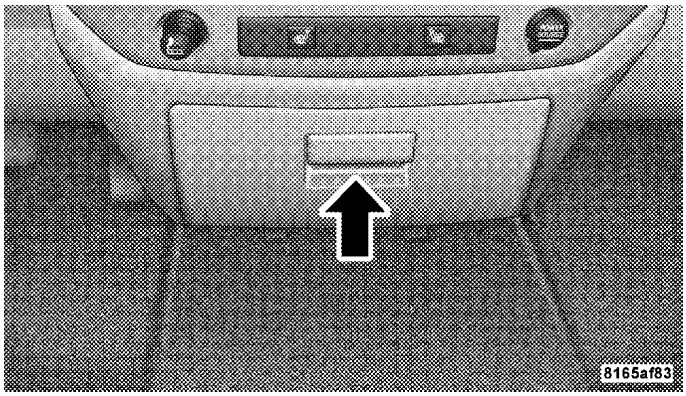
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CUPHOLDERS

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (40–20–40 Seats) — Automatic Transmission

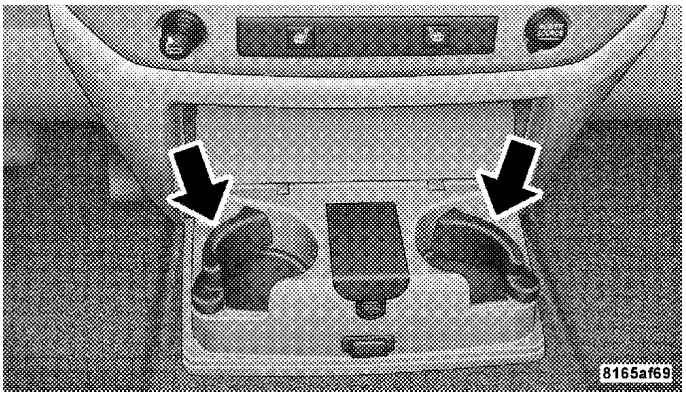
Your new Ram truck is equipped with two adjustable cupholders. The cupholder is opened by pulling on the cup holder door handle, on the front surface. Each opening in the cupholder is adjustable and will hold cups and mugs of various sizes.

To secure the cup, place the cup to be held into one of the cup wells and then push the cupholder arm toward the cup until it is held stable.



Cup Holder Door Handle

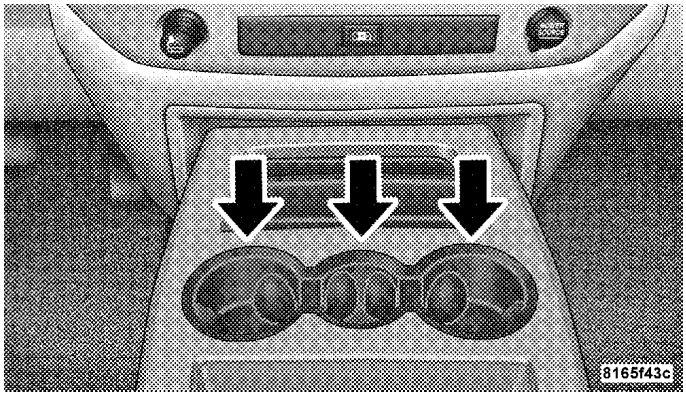
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Cup Holders Automatic Transmission

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders (Bucket Seats) — Automatic Transmission

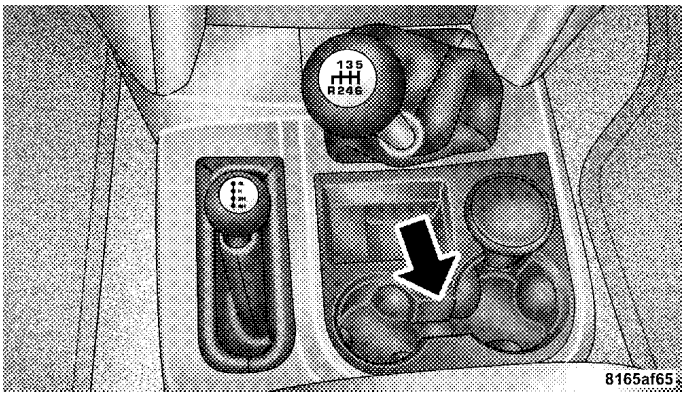
If your new Ram truck is equipped with bucket seats there are three cup holders located on the front of the center console.



Cup Holders Bucket Seat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Instrument Panel Cupholders — Manual Transmission



Cup Holders Manual Transmission

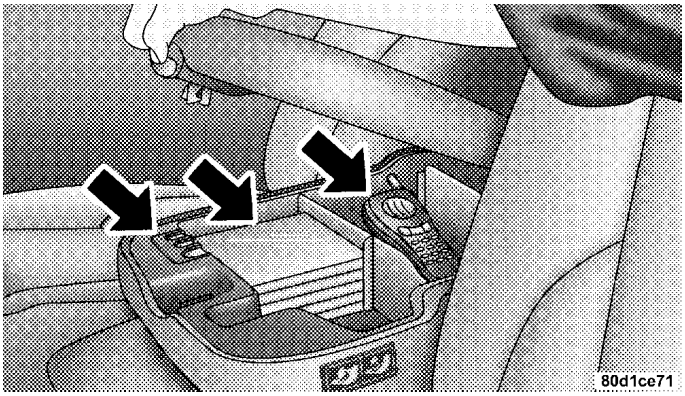
Rear Cupholder (Quad Cab) — If Equipped

Quad Cab vehicles may be equipped with a rear cupholder that consists of two cupwells for rear passenger convenience.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STORAGE

Center Storage Compartment (40–20–40 Seat) — If Equipped



The center portion of the seat folds down to provide an armrest with unique storage compartments under the lid. Push the button on the front of the armrest to raise the cover. Inside there is a power outlet (if equipped), removable coin holder (if equipped), and two dividers to configure the storage area into compartments. For example, compartments can be configured to hold a lap-top computer, a cellular telephone, CD's and miscellaneous items. The top of the cover provides a generous firm surface to serve as a desktop for your "mobile office."

WARNING!

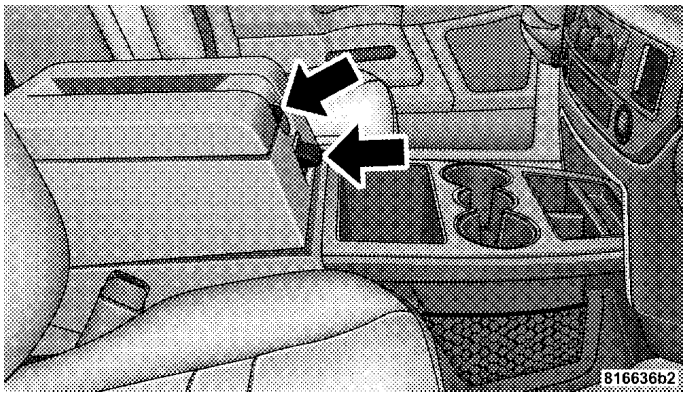
- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e. cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

Center Storage Compartment (Bucket Seats) — If Equipped



Center Storage Compartment

Push the upper button on the front of the armrest to raise the upper cover. Inside is a power outlet (if equipped), a cut out for a cell phone charger cord, removable coin holder (if equipped), and a divider to configure the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

storage area into separate compartments. Lift the lower handle on the front of the armrest, and raise the armrest for access to the lower storage bin. On Quad Cab models the rear of the floor console offers a power outlet, and a tip out bin.

WARNING!

- **This armrest is not a seat. Anyone seated on the armrest could be seriously injured during vehicle operation, or an accident. Only use the center seating position when the armrest is fully upright.**
- **In an accident, the latch may open if the total weight of the items stored exceeds about 10 lbs (4.5 kg). These items could be thrown about endangering occupants of the vehicle. Items stored should not exceed a total of 10 lbs (4.5 kg).**

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e. cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will degrade the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

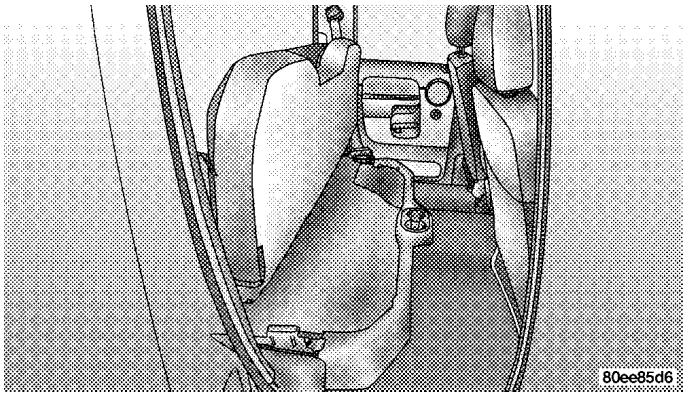
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage and Seats (Quad Cab Models)

Located in the center of the front 40/20/40 seat cushion there is a storage compartment.

Standard cab models also have storage behind the seat.

The Quad Cab models provide additional storage under the rear seat. Lift the seat to access the storage compartment.

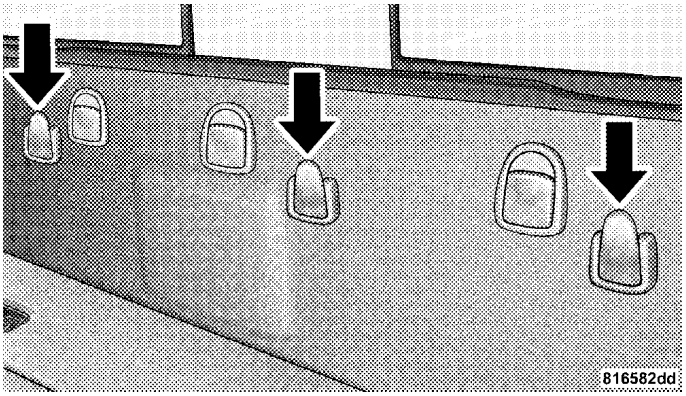


Quad Cab Storage

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Plastic Grocery Bag Retainers

Retainer hooks which will hold plastic grocery bag handles are built into the back panel of the cab, behind the rear seat.



Grocery Bag Hooks

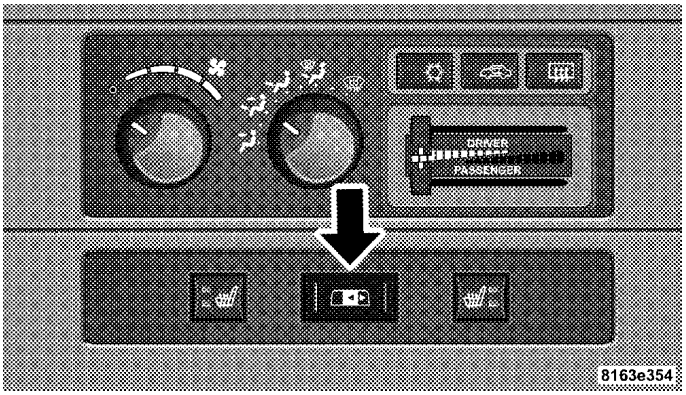
REAR WINDOW FEATURES

Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated Side view Mirrors — If Equipped

The Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated side view mirrors are activated by pressing the heated grid button, located on the Climate Control panel, with the ignition On. Turning Off the ignition will deactivate the Electric Rear Window Defroster and Heated side view mirrors feature. These features also turn off after activation, when 15 minutes have elapsed. To reactivate, simply press the button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped



Power Sliding Rear Window Switch

The power sliding rear window switch is located on the instrument panel below the climate controls. Press the right side of the switch to open the glass and the left side of the switch to close the glass.

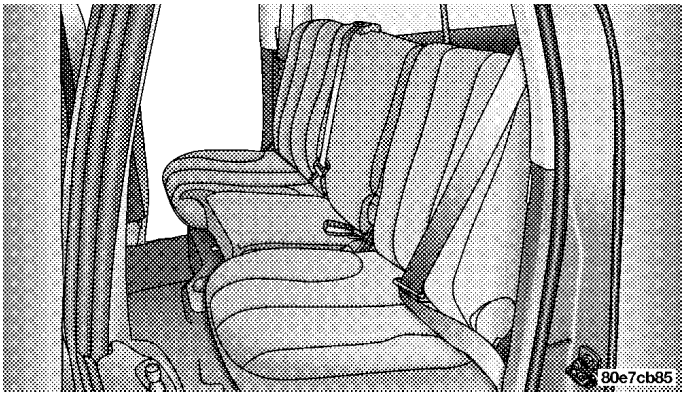
Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FOLD FLAT LOAD FLOOR — IF EQUIPPED

Quad Cab models with a 60/40 rear seat, may be equipped with a folding load floor.



Quad Cab Rear 60/40 Seat

WARNING!

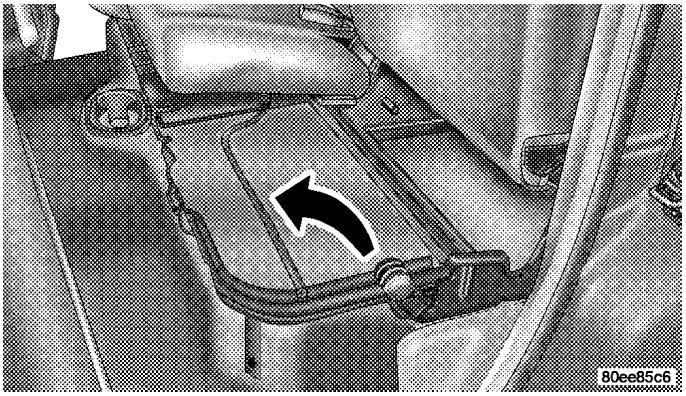
Do not operate the vehicle with loose items stored on the load floor. While driving or in an accident you may experience, abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. Loose objects stored on the load floor may move around with force and strike occupants, resulting in serious or fatal injury.

3

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

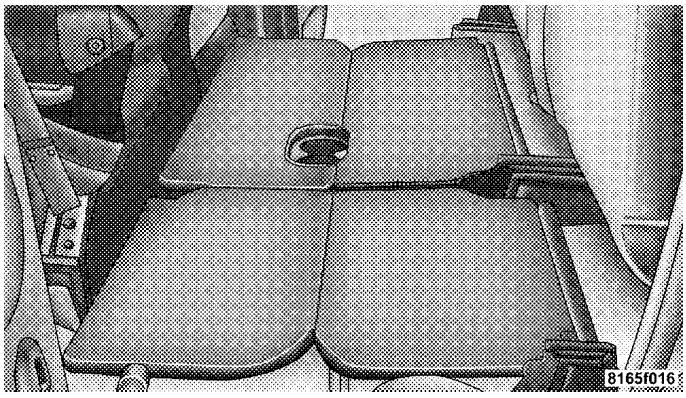
Unfolding the Load Floor

1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.



Unfolding The Load Floor

2. Grasp the knob on the load floor and lift the knob until the load floor unfolds into position.



Load Floor In Open Position

3. Reverse the procedure to store the load floor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Positioning the Load Floor for Storage Access Under the Seat

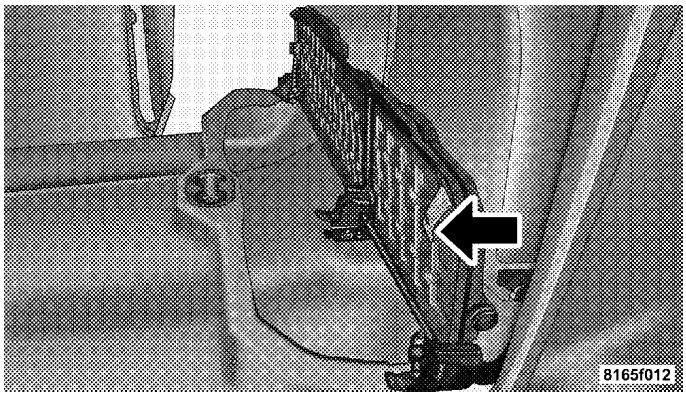
1. Lift the 60/40 seat cushion(s) to the upward position.

2. Unsnap the securing snap located at either side of the load floor.

3. Lift the load floor up to access storage under the load floor.

WARNING!

Do not drive with the load floor in the up position. When stopping fast or in an accident, the load floor could move to the down position causing serious injury.



Load Floor Securing Straps

4. Reverse the procedure to put the load floor back in the secured down position before you operate the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

UNDERSTANDING YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL

CONTENTS

- ■ Instruments And Controls 171
- ■ Instrument Clusters 172
  - □ 5.7L Gas Engines 172
  - □ 6.7L Cummins Diesel Engines 173
- ■ Instrument Cluster Description 174
- ■ Electronic Digital Clock 183
  - □ Clock Setting Procedure 184
- ■ Radio General Information 184
  - □ Radio Broadcast Signals 184
  - □ Two Types Of Signals 184
  - □ Electrical Disturbances 185
  - □ AM Reception 185
  - □ FM Reception 185
- ■ Sales Code REF — AM/FM/CD (Single Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio And Hands Free Phone Capability 186
  - □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 186
  - □ Operation Instructions - CD Mode 190
  - □ Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode 192

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone — If Equipped 193
- □ Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio — If Equipped 193

■ Sales Code RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio, Hands Free Phone, And Vehicle Entertainment Systems (VES) Capabilities 194

- □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 194
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 199
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 201
- □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files 203
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 Audio Play) 205
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play) . . .205

■ Sales Code RAK – AM/FM/Cassette/CD (6-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio, Hands Free Phone, Video, MP3, And WMA Capabilities 208

- □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 208
- □ Operating Instructions — Tape Player 212
- □ Seek Button 212
- □ Fast Forward (FF) 213
- □ Rewind (RW) 213
- □ Tape Eject 213
- □ Scan Button 213
- □ Changing Tape Direction 213
- □ Metal Tape Selection 213
- □ Pinch Roller Release 213

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Noise Reduction 214
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 214
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 215
- □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files 217
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 And WMA Audio Play) 219
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For MP3 And WMA Play) 219

■ Sales Code REC — AM/FM/CD (6–Disc) Radio With Navigation System 222

- □ Operating Instructions — Satellite Radio (If Equipped) 222
- □ REC Setting The Clock 222
- □ Audio Clock Display 225

■ Video Entertainment System (Sales Code XRV) — If Equipped 226

■ Satellite Radio — If Equipped 226

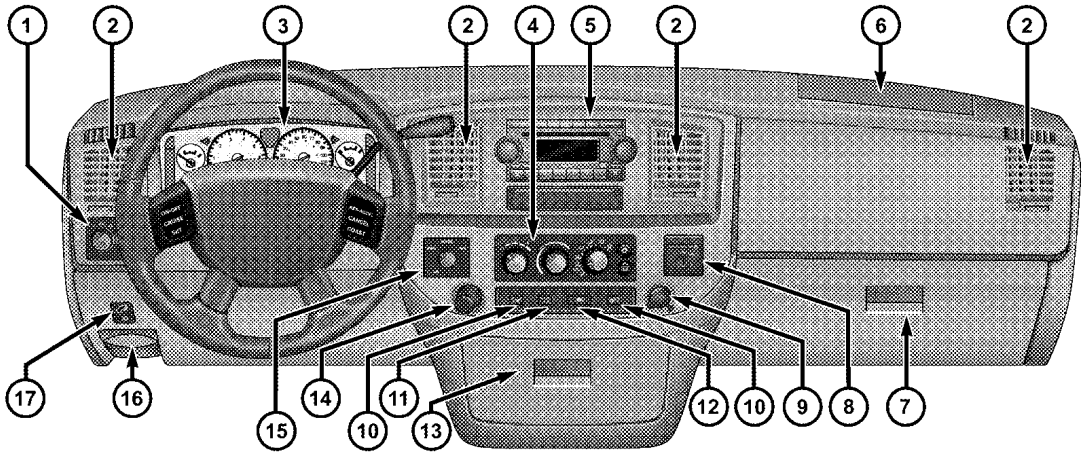
- □ System Activation 226
- □ Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID) 227
- □ Selecting Satellite Mode In REF, RAQ, And RAK Radios 228
- □ Selecting a Channel 228
- □ Storing And Selecting Pre-Set Channels 229
- □ Using The PTY (Program Type) Button — If Equipped 229
- □ PTY Button ″Scan″ 229

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ PTY Button ″Seek″ 229
- □ Satellite Antenna 229
- □ Reception Quality 230
- ■ Remote Sound System Controls — If Equipped 230
- □ Radio Operation 231
- □ Tape Player 231
- □ CD Player 231
- ■ Cassette Tape And Player Maintenance 232
- ■ Compact Disc Maintenance 233
- ■ Radio Operation And Cellular Phones 233
- ■ Climate Controls 234
- □ Heater Only — If Equipped 234
- □ Air Conditioning And Heating — If Equipped 237
- □ Air Conditioning With Dual Zone Temperature Control — If Equipped 240
- □ Operating Tips 244
- □ Operating Tips Chart 246

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



1. Headlight Switch
2. Air Outlets
3. Instrument Cluster
4. Climate Controls
5. Radio
6. Passenger Airbag*
7. Glove Box
8. Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch*
9. Power Outlet
10. Heated Seat Switch
11. Exhaust Brake Switch*
12. Power Sliding Back Glass*
13. Cup Holders
14. Cigar Lighter
15. Transfer Case Control Switch*
16. Parking Brake Release Lever
17. Adjustable Pedal Control Switch*

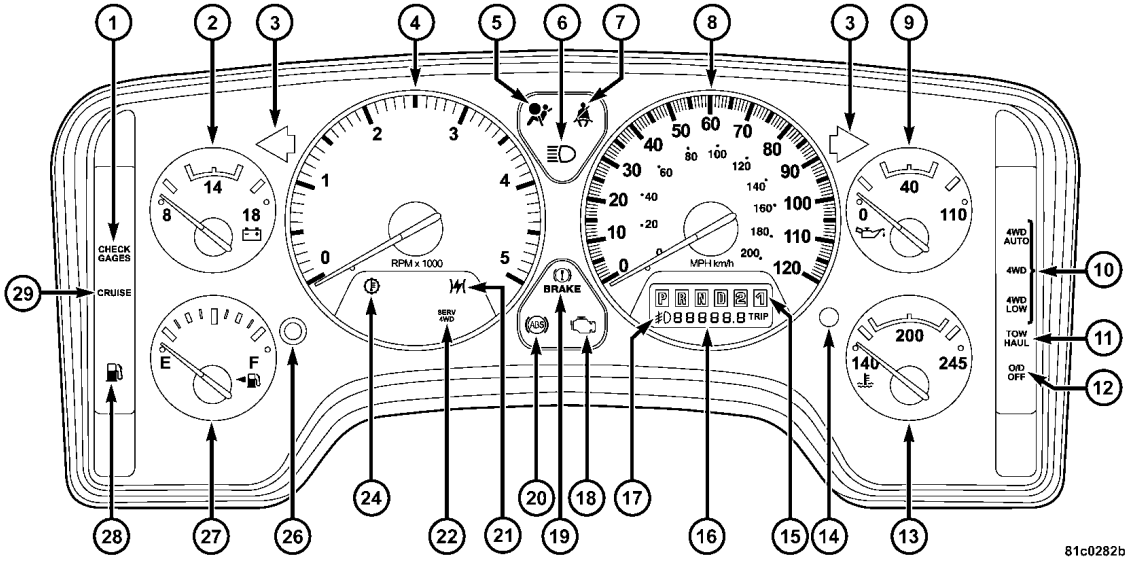
*If Equipped

81947cf4

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

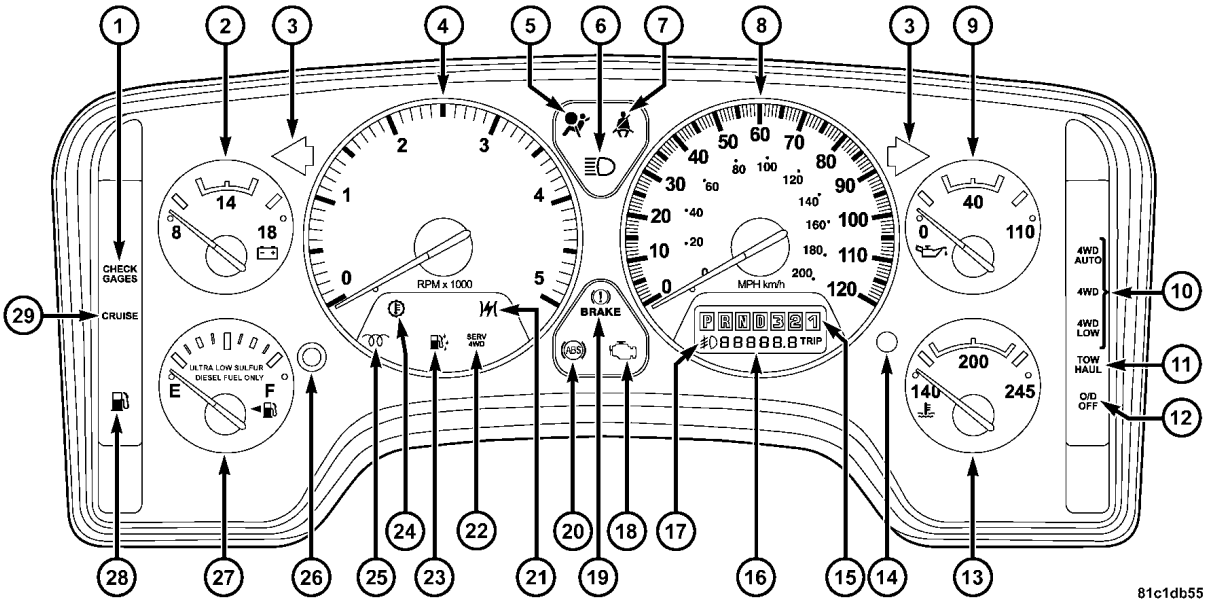
INSTRUMENT CLUSTERS

5.7L Gas Engines



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6.7L Cummins Diesel Engines



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTION

1. Check Gages

CHECK GAGES This light illuminates when the Voltmeter, Engine Oil Pressure or Engine Coolant Temperature gages indicate a reading either too high or too low. Examine the gages carefully, and follow the instructions contained below for each indicated problem.

NOTE: When the ignition switch is turned to OFF, the Fuel Gage, Voltmeter, Oil Pressure and Engine Coolant Temperature gages may not show accurate readings. When the engine is not running, turn the ignition switch to ON to obtain accurate readings.

2. Voltmeter

When the engine is running, the gauge indicates the electrical system voltage. The pointer should stay within the normal range if the battery is charged. If the pointer moves to either extreme left or right and remains there during normal driving, the electrical system should be serviced.

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the “Check Gages” indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

NOTE:

- The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.
- The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlamps, interior lamps, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Turn Signal Indicators

Lights in instrument cluster flash when outside turn signals are operating.

4. Tachometer

The tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute.

CAUTION!

Do not operate the engine with the tachometer pointer at high rpm for extended periods. Engine damage may occur.

5. Airbag Indicator Light

The indicator lights and remains lit for 6 to 8 seconds when the ignition is first turned on. If the light stays on, flickers or comes on while driving, have the airbag system checked by an authorized dealer.

6. High Beam Indicator

This indicator shows that headlights are on high beam.

7. Seat Belt Reminder Light

When the ignition switch is first turned ON, this light will turn on for 5 to 8 seconds as a bulb check. During the bulb check, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound. After the bulb check or when driving, if the driver seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Warning Light will flash or remain on continuously. Refer to ″Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert™)″ in the Occupant Restraints section for more information.(See page 35 for more information.)

8. Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed in miles per hour and/or kilometers per hour.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9. Oil Pressure Gauge

The pointer should always indicate some oil pressure when the engine is running. A continuous high or low reading, under normal driving conditions, may indicate a lubrication system malfunction. Immediate service should be obtained.(See page 406 for more information.)

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gages" indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

10. Transfer Case Position

(See page 289 for more information.)

***11.* TOW HAUL**

The TOW HAUL button is located at the end of the gear shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW HAUL OD/OFF button is pushed once.(See page 277 for more information.)

***12.* OD/OFF**

the OD/OFF button is located at the end of the gear shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW HAUL OD/OFF button is pushed twice.(See page 277 for more information.)

13. Temperature Gauge

The temperature gauge indicates engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the cooling system is operating satisfactorily. The gauge needle will likely indicate a higher temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, in heavy traffic, or when towing a trailer. If the needle rises to the "245°F" mark, stop the vehicle, shift into N (Neutral), and increase the engine idle speed for 2 to 3 minutes. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, shut your engine OFF and allow it to cool. Seek authorized service immediately. See Cooling System information in the section on "Maintaining Your Vehicle."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running as you would not be able to react to the temperature indicator if the engine overheats.

NOTE: Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.

NOTE: If the gauge pointer moves to either extreme of the gauge, the "Check Gages" indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound.

14. Security Light

The light will flash rapidly for approximately 16 seconds when the vehicle theft alarm is arming. The light will flash at a slower rate after the alarm is set. The security light will also come on for about two seconds when the ignition is first turned ON.

15. Transmission Range Indicator (Automatic Transmissions Only)

When the gear selector lever is moved, this indicator shows the automatic transmission gear range selected.

16. Odometer/Trip Odometer

The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven. U.S. federal regulations require that upon transfer of vehicle ownership, the seller certify to the purchaser the correct mileage that the vehicle has been driven. Therefore, if the odometer reading is changed during repair or replacement, be sure to keep a record of the reading before and after the service so that the correct mileage can be determined.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The two trip odometers show individual trip mileage. To switch from odometer to trip odometers, press and release the Trip Odometer button.

To reset a trip odometer, display the desired trip odometer to be reset then push and hold the button until the display resets (approximately 2 seconds).

Vehicle Warning Messages

For non–Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) equipped vehicles, and the appropriate conditions exist, messages such as “door” (indicates that a door(s) may be ajar), “hood” (if the hood is open or ajar, on vehicles with remote start), “gASCAP” (which indicates that your gas cap is possibly loose or damaged), ″CHANgE OIL” (indicates that the engine oil should be change), “LoWASH” (low washer fluid),” LoCOOL” (low engine coolant level) and “noFUSE” (indicates that the IOD fuse is removed from the Integrated Power Module), will display in the odometer.

NOTE: If the vehicle is equipped with an EVIC, most warnings will display in the EVIC. For additional information, refer to “Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) — If Equipped” in Section 3.

NOTE: There is also an engine hour function. This indicates the total number of hours the engine has been running. To display the engine hours perform the following: Place the ignition in RUN, but do not start the engine. With the odometer value displayed, hold the trip button down for a period of 6 seconds. The odometer will change to trip value first, then it will display the engine hour value. The engine hours will be displayed for a period of 30 seconds until the ignition is turned off or the engine is started.

Change Oil Message

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Change Oil” message will flash in the instrument cluster odometer for approximately 12

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

seconds after a single chime has sounded to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate dependent upon your personal driving style.

Unless reset, this message will continue to display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON/RUN position. To turn off the message temporarily, press and release the Trip Odometer button on the instrument cluster. To reset the oil change indicator system (after performing the scheduled maintenance) refer to the following procedure.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position **(Do not start the engine).**
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal slowly three times within 10 seconds.
3. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF/LOCK position.

NOTE: If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary repeat this procedure.

17. Front Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped

This light shows when the front fog lights are ON.

18. Malfunction Indicator Light

This light is part of an onboard diagnostic system which monitors the emissions and engine control system. If the vehicle is ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on, as a bulb check, until the engine is started. If the vehicle is not ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds, then blink for 5 seconds, and remain on until the vehicle is started. If the bulb does not come on during starting, have the condition investigated promptly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If this light comes on and remains on while driving, it suggests a potential engine control problem and the need for system service.

Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability.

If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

19. Brake System Warning Light

This light illuminates when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and remains on for a few seconds. If the light stays on longer, it may be an indication that the parking brake has not been released. This light will illuminate if the brake fluid is low, especially when braking or accelerating hard. This light will illuminate if the ABS indicator light has a malfunction. This light will flash if the engine is running and the parking brake is on. If the light remains on when the parking brake is released, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction. In this case, the light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary and continued operation of the vehicle in this condition is dangerous.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Acceleration which causes the rear wheels to slip for a period of time may result in the red brake light illuminating and a brake switch code being set on ABS equipped vehicles. Depressing the brake pedal should extinguish the red brake light.

20. ABS Warning Light

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System which is described elsewhere in this manual. This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and may stay on for five seconds. If the ABS light remains on or comes on during driving, it indicates that the anti-lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. See your authorized dealer immediately. The ABS light could also illuminate during loss of traction and remain illuminated until the brake pedal is pressed.

21. Electronic Throttle Control (ETC)

This light informs you of a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control system. If a problem is detected the light will come on while the engine is running. If the light remains lit with the engine running your vehicle will usually be drivable, however, see your dealer for service as soon as possible. If the light is flashing when the engine is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

22. SERV 4WD Indicator

The 4WD indicator will be illuminated whenever the 4WD mode is engaged for either the manual or electric shift 4WD systems. The SERV 4WD indicator monitors

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the electric shift 4WD system. If the SERV 4WD light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

23. Water In Fuel Indicator — Diesel Only

Indicates there is water detected in the fuel filter. Refer to the Maintenance section, Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter, for water drain procedure.(See page 417 for more information.)

24. Transmission Oil Temperature Warning Light (Automatic Transmissions Only)

This light indicates that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. It may also occur when operating the vehicle in a high torque converter slip condition, such as 4-wheel-drive operation (e.g. snow plowing, off- road operation). If this light comes on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or faster, with the transmission in NEUTRAL until the light goes off.

25. Wait To Start Indicator — Diesel Only

The Wait To Start Indicator will illuminate when the ignition is turned to the run position and the intake manifold temperature is below 66 degrees F. Follow engine starting procedure for proper engine starting and operating. Wait until the Wait To Start Indicator turns OFF then start the vehicle.

NOTE: The Wait To Start Indicator may not illuminate if the engine coolant temperature is warm enough.

26. Odometer/Trip Odometer Button

Press this button to toggle between the odometer and the trip odometer display. Holding the button in resets the trip odometer reading when in trip mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

27. Fuel Gauge

Shows level of fuel in tank when ignition switch is in the ON position.

28. Low Fuel Warning Light

Glows when the pointer is between "E" and 1/8 indication mark (approximately 15% of tank volume) on the fuel gauge. When the fuel gauge pointer is on "E" (equivalent to Distance To Empty [DTE] = 0 on the overhead console if so equipped) there is reserve fuel capacity, which corresponds to approximately 8% of tank volume. This reserve capacity was put in place to prevent the likelihood of customers running out of fuel when operating at maximum load conditions in areas where there aren't many gas stations.(See page 137 for more information.)

Ram fuel tank volumes are as follows:

- 52 gallons - Standard Rear Tank
- 22 gallons - Optional Mid Ship Tank

29. CRUISE Light

This indicator lights when the electronic speed control system is turned on.

4

ELECTRONIC DIGITAL CLOCK

The clock and radio each use the display panel built into the radio. A digital readout shows the frequency and/or time in hours and minutes (depending on your radio model) whenever the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

When the ignition switch is in the "OFF" position, or when the radio frequency is being displayed, time keeping is accurately maintained.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On the RAQ radio the time button alternates the location of the time and frequency on the display. On the REF only one of the two, time or frequency is displayed at a time.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune / Audio control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune / Audio control to set the minutes.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune / Audio control.

5. To exit, press any button / knob or wait approximately 5 seconds.

RADIO GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Broadcast Signals

Your new radio will provide excellent reception under most operating conditions. Like any system, however, car radios have performance limitations, due to mobile operation and natural phenomena, which might lead you to believe your sound system is malfunctioning. To help you understand and save you concern about these “apparent” malfunctions, you must understand a point or two about the transmission and reception of radio signals.

Two Types of Signals

There are two basic types of radio signals... AM or Amplitude Modulation, in which the transmitted sound causes the amplitude, or height, of the radio waves to vary... and FM or Frequency Modulation, in which the frequency of the wave is varied to carry the sound.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electrical Disturbances

Radio waves may pick up electrical disturbances during transmission. They mainly affect the wave amplitude, and thus remain a part of the AM reception. They interfere very little with the frequency variations that carry the FM signal.

AM Reception

AM sound is based on wave amplitude, so AM reception can be disrupted by such things as lightning, power lines and neon signs.

FM Reception

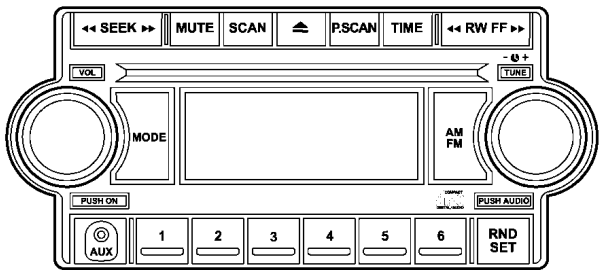
Because FM transmission is based on frequency variations, interference that consists of amplitude variations can be filtered out, leaving the reception relatively clear, which is the major feature of FM radio.

NOTE: The radio, steering wheel radio controls (if equipped), and 6 disc CD/DVD changer (if equipped) will remain active for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch has been turned off. Opening a vehicle front door will cancel this feature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SALES CODE REF — AM/FM/CD (SINGLE DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO AND HANDS FREE PHONE CAPABILITY

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



815eb156

REF Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

For your convenience, the volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning ON/OFF the ignition, will cancel the MUTE feature.

NOTE: In Hands Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station in either, AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

PSCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the PSCAN button causes the tuner to scan through preset stations in either, AM, FM, or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each preset station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press PSCAN a second time.

Time Button
Press the time button and the time of day will display for 5 seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune/Audio control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune/Audio control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune/Audio control.

5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait 5 seconds.

RW/FF (Radio Mode)

Pressing the rewind/fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)

Turn the right side rotary control clockwise to increase or counter-clockwise to decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)

Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade

Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREB will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the tune control again or wait 5 seconds to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

RND/SET Button (Radio Mode) To SET The Push-Button Memory

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to push-button memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into push-button memory.

You may add a second station to each push-button by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into push-button memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the push-button twice.

Every time a preset button is used, a corresponding button number will display.

Preset Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)

These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operation Instructions - CD Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Inserting The Compact Disc (Single CD Player)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

If the volume control is ON, the unit will switch to CD mode and begin to play. The display will show the track number and play time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

NOTE:

- On some vehicles, you may insert or eject a disc with the radio or ignition switch OFF.
- If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio OFF, the CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player.
- This radio does not play discs with MP3 tracks.

SEEK Button (CD Mode)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next track on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current track, or return to the beginning of the previous track if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCAN Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to play the first 10 seconds of each track. To stop the scan function, press the button a second time.

EJECT Button (CD Mode)
Press this button and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. The unit will switch to the last selected mode.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. The radio mode will continue to appear.

TIME Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed CD playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for 5 seconds.

RW/FF (CD Mode)
Press and hold the FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

RND/SET Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random Play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operation Instructions - Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary (AUX) jack is an audio input jack, which allows the user to plug in a portable device such as an MP3 player, cassette player, or microphone and utilize the vehicle's audio system to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

The auxiliary mode becomes active when an electrical device is plugged into the AUX jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo audio cable and the user presses and releases the MODE button until AUX appears on the display.

NOTE: The radio will return to the last stored mode if the ignition switch is turned from the OFF/LOCK position to the ACC position, the radio is turned on, and the radio was previously in the AUX mode.

SEEK Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

MUTE Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will display. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

EJECT Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

PSCAN Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIME Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed playing time to time of day. The time of day will display for 5 seconds.

RW/FF (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

RND/SET Button (Auxiliary Mode)
No function.

Mode Button (Auxiliary Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player and Satellite Radio (if equipped).

Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone — If Equipped

Refer to the "HANDS FREE PHONE (UConnect™)" section of the Owner's Manual.

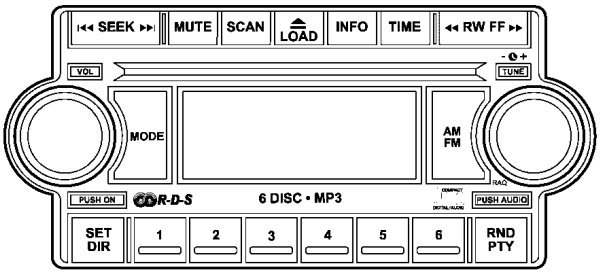
Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio — If Equipped

Refer to the "Satellite Radio" section of the Owner's Manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SALES CODE RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO, HANDS FREE PHONE, AND VEHICLE ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEMS (VES) CAPABILITIES

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



RAQ Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

For your convenience, the volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player, Satellite Radio, or Vehicle Entertainment System (VES) (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remain tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers

NOTE: In Hands Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

MSG or INFO Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MSG or INFO button for an RBDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast from an FM station (FM mode only).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Time Button
Press the time button and the time of day will be displayed for 5 seconds.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.

2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune / Audio control.

3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune / Audio control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.

4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune / Audio control.

5. To exit, press any button / knob or wait 5 seconds.

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the rewind / fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the right side rotary control clockwise to increase or counter-clockwise to decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BALANCE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the left or right to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control again to exit setting tone, balance and fade.

RND/PTY Button (Radio Mode)

Pressing this button once will turn on the PTY mode for 5 seconds. If no action is taken during the 5 second time out the PTY icon will turn off. Pressing the PTY button or turning the TUNE rotary knob within 5 seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast PTY information.

Toggle the PTY button to select the following format types:

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
No program type or undefined	None
Adult Hits	Adult_Hits
Alert Alert	Alert Alert
Classical	Classical
Classic Rock	Classic_Rock
College	College
Country	Country
Emergency Test	Emergency Test
Foreign Language	Foreign_Language
Information	Information

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jazz	Jazz
News	News
Nostalgia	Nostalgia
Oldies	Oldies
Personality	Personality
Public	Public
Rhythm and Blues	Rhythm_and_Blues
Religious Music	Religious_Music
Religious Talk	Religious_Talk
Rock	Rock
Soft	Soft
Soft Rock	Soft_Rock
Soft Rhythm and Blues	Soft_R_&_B
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Top 40	Top_40
Weather	Weather

By pressing the SEEK button when the PTY icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected PTY name. The PTY function only operates when in the FM mode.

If a preset button is activated while in the PTY (Program Type) mode, the PTY mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

SET/DIR Button (Radio Mode) — To Set the Push-Button Memory

When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to push-button memory, press the SET/DIR button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window. Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within 5 seconds after pressing the SET/DIR button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into push-button memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You may add a second station to each push-button by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET/DIR button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM,12 FM and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into push-button memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the push-button twice.

Every time a preset button is used a corresponding button number will be displayed.

Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)
These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Operation Instructions - (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

NOTE: Note: This Radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW) compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks.

Inserting Compact Disc(s)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

This CD player will accept 4 3/4 inch (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

You may eject a disc with the radio OFF.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the disc number, the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track 1.

SEEK Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON/OFF, or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press the Scan button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

LOAD/ EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″LOAD DISC″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading, and “READING DISC” when the radio is reading the disc.

LOAD / EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/ EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

Press and hold the LOAD/ EJT button for 5 seconds and all CDs will be ejected from the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD’s in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a 2 minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD’s in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC” for 10 seconds. If no discs are inserted within 10 seconds “NO DISCS LOADED” will be displayed.

On some vehicles a disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TIME Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

RW/FF (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

TUNE Control (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the setting of the Tone, Fade, and Balance. See Radio Mode.

AM/FM Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Switches the Radio to the Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (Random Play Button) (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random Play.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Notes On Playing MP3 Files

The radio can play MP3 files, however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

Supported Media (Disc Types)

The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW.

Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)

The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 15
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as ″keep disc open after writing″ are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the *.mp3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the *.mp3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

MPEG Specification	Sampling Frequency (kHz)	Bit rate (kbps)
MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3	48, 44.1, 32	320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32
MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3	24, 22.05, 16	160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playback of MP3 Files

When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the Disc at Once option before writing to the disc.

Operation Instructions - (CD Mode for MP3 Audio Play)

SEEK Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the right side of the SEEK button plays the next MP3 File. Pressing the left side of the SEEK button plays the beginning of the MP3 file. Pressing the button within the first ten seconds plays the previous file.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

LOAD/ EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″LOAD DISC″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOAD / EJECT - Eject

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD's in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a 2 minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD's in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC" for 2 minutes. After 2 minutes the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

MSG or INFO Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Press and MSG or INFO button while playing MP3 disc. The radio scrolls through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the MSG or INFO button once more to return to ″elapsed time″ priority mode.

Press and hold the MSG or INFO button while in the message display priority mode or elapsed time display priority mode will display the song title for each file.

RW/FF (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Press the FF side of the button to move forward through the MP3 selection.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the TUNE Control allows the adjustment of Tone, Balance, and Fade.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Switches back to Radio mode.

RND/ PTY Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Pressing this button plays files randomly.

SET/DIR Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press the SET/DIR Button to display folders, when playing an MP3 discs that have a file/folder structure. Turn the TUNE control to display available folders or move through available folders. Press the TUNE control to select a folder.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone (If Equipped)
Refer to Hands Free Phone in Section 3 of the Owner's Manual.

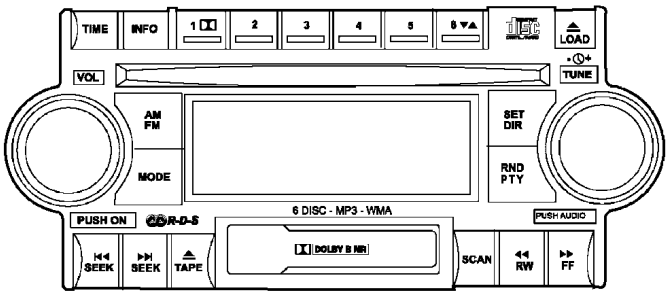
Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio Mode (If Equipped)
Refer to the Satellite Radio section of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES®) (If Equipped)
Refer to separate Video Entertainment System (VES®) Guide.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SALES CODE RAK – AM/FM/CASSETTE/CD (6-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO, HANDS FREE PHONE, VIDEO, MP3, and WMA CAPABILITIES

NOTE: The radio sales code is located on the lower right side of your radio faceplate.



RAK Radio

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player, Cassette, Satellite, or Vehicle Entertainment System (VES) (if equipped).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down. The radio will remained tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button and will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds (satellite scan 8 seconds) at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

Time Button
Press the time button and the time of day will display for 5 seconds.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune/Audio control.
3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune/Audio control to set the minutes. The minutes will begin to blink.
4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune/Audio control.
5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait 5 seconds.

INFO Button (Radio Mode)
Press the INFO button for an RBDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast (if available) from an FM station (FM mode only).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the rewind / fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the right side rotary control to increase or decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control again to exit setting tone, balance, and fade.

RND/PTY Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing this button once will turn on the PTY mode for 5 seconds. If no action is taken during the 5-second time out, the PTY icon will turn off. Turning the tune knob within 5 seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast PTY information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the tune knob to select the following format types:

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
No program type or undefined	None
News	News
Information	Information
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Rock	Rock
Classic Rock	Classic_Rock
Adult Hits	Adult_Hits
Soft Rock	Soft_Rock
Top 40	Top_40
Country	Country
Oldies	Oldies
Soft	Soft
Nostalgia	Nostalgia
Jazz	Jazz
Classical	Classical
Rhythm and Blues	Rhythm_and_Blues
Soft Rhythm and Blues	Soft_R_&_B
Foreign Language	Foreign_Language
Religious Music	Religious_Music
Religious Talk	Religious_Talk
Personality	Personality
Public	Public
College	College
Unassigned	
Weather	Weather

By pressing the SEEK button when the PTY icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected PTY name. The PTY function only operates when in the FM mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If a preset button is activated while in the PTY (Program Type) mode, the PTY mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

NOTE: If you have selected a PTY with the tune knob, simply pressing the tune button in will go directly to a "PTY seek".

Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)
These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Operating Instructions — Tape Player
Insert the cassette with the exposed tape side toward the left and the mechanical action of the player will gently pull the cassette into the play position.

NOTE: When subjected to extremely cold temperatures, the tape mechanism may require a few minutes to warm up for proper operation. Sometimes poor playback may be experienced due to a defective cassette tape. Clean and demagnetize the tape heads at least twice a year.

Seek Button
Press the SEEK button up for the next selection on the tape and down to return to the beginning of the current selection.

Press the SEEK button up or down to move the track number to skip forward or backward 1 to 6 selections. Press the SEEK button once to move 1 selection, twice to move 2 selections, etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fast Forward (FF)

Press the FF button up momentarily to advance the tape in the direction that it is playing. The tape will advance until the button is pressed again or the end of the tape is reached. At the end of the tape, the tape will play in the opposite direction.

Rewind (RW)

Press the RW button momentarily to reverse the tape direction. The tape will reverse until the button is pressed again or until the end of the tape is reached. At the end of the tape, the tape will play in the opposite direction.

Tape Eject

Press this button and the cassette will disengage and eject from the radio.

Scan Button

Press this button to play 10 seconds of each selection. Press the scan button a second time to cancel the feature.

Changing Tape Direction

If you wish to change the direction of tape travel (side being played), press Preset 6. The lighted arrow in the display window will show the new direction.

Metal Tape Selection

If a standard metal tape is inserted into the player, the player will automatically select the correct equalization.

Pinch Roller Release

If ignition power or the radio ON/OFF switch is turned off, the pinch roller will automatically retract to protect the tape from any damage. When power is restored to the tape player, the pinch roller will automatically reengage and the tape will resume play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Noise Reduction

The Dolby Noise Reduction System* is on whenever the tape player is on, but may be switched off.

To turn off the Dolby Noise reduction System: Press Preset 1 after you insert the tape. The NR light in the display will go off when the Dolby System is off.

* "Dolby" noise reduction is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

Operation Instructions - (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

NOTE: Note: This Radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW) compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks and WMA.

Inserting Compact Disc(s)

CAUTION!
This CD player will accept 4 3/4 inch (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

You may eject a disc with the radio OFF.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the disc number, the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track 1.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEEK Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first 5 seconds of the current selection.

SCAN Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press the Scan button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for CD Audio Play)

LOAD/EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″INSERT DISC,″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading and “READING DISC” when the radio is reading the disc.

LOAD/EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

Press and hold the LOAD/EJT button for 5 seconds and all CDs will be ejected from the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD’s in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a 2-minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD’s in the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC” for 2 minutes. After 2 minutes, the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

The disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

TIME Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display to a small CD playing time display.

RW/FF (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press and hold FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

TUNE Control (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the setting of the Tone, Fade, and Balance. See Radio Mode.

AM/FM Button (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Switches the Radio to the Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (Random Play Button) (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

NOTE: MP3 and WMA Random Play are for file folders only.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

Press the RND button a second time to stop Random Play.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD MODE for CD Audio Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Notes On Playing MP3 Files

The radio can play MP3 files; however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

Supported Media (Disc Types)
The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CD-ROM, CD-R, and CD-RW.

Supported Medium Formats (File Systems)
The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 15
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as ″keep disc open after writing″ are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Supported MP3 File Formats

The radio will recognize only files with the *.mp3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the *.mp3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

MPEG Specification	Sampling Frequency (kHz)	Bit rate (kbps)
MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3	48, 44.1, 32	320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32
MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3	24, 22.05, 16	160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title, and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playback of MP3 and WMA Files

When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 and WMA files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the Disc at Once option before writing to the disc.

Operation Instructions - (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Audio Play)

SEEK Button (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)

Pressing the right side of the SEEK button plays the next file. Pressing the left side of the SEEK button plays the beginning of the file. Pressing the button within the first ten seconds plays the previous file.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)

LOAD/EJT - Load

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″INSERT DISC,″ insert the CD into the player.

The radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LOAD/EJT - Eject

Press the LOAD/EJT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD's in the radio, the radio will play the next CD after a 2-minute timeout. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD's in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″INSERT DISC" for 2 minutes. After 2 minutes, the radio will go to the previous tuner mode.

INFO Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Press and INFO button while playing MP3 or WMA disc. The radio scrolls through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the INFO button once more to return to ″elapsed time″ priority mode.

Press and hold the INFO button while in the message display priority mode or elapsed time display priority mode will display the song title for each file.

RW/FF (CD Mode for MP3 and WMA Play)

Press the FF side of the button to move forward through the file or MP3 and WMA selection.

TUNE Control (CD Mode for MP3 Play)

Pressing the TUNE Control allows the adjustment of Tone, Balance, and Fade.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AM/FM Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Switches back to Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Pressing this button plays files randomly.

SET/DIR Button (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Press the SET/DIR Button to display folders, when playing an MP3 discs that have a file/folder structure. Turn the TUNE control to display available folders or move through available folders. Press the TUNE control to select a folder.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode for MP3 Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

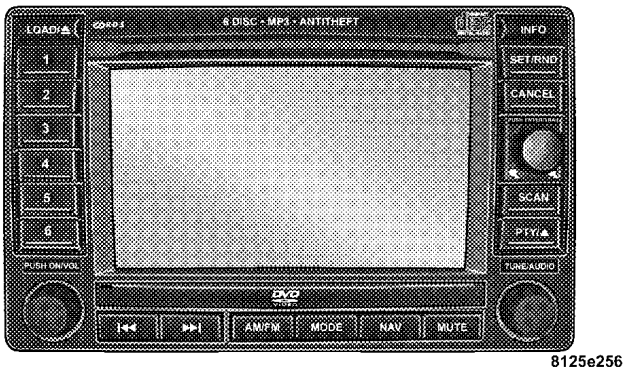
Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone (If Equipped)
Refer to "Hands-Free Phone" in Section 3 of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio Mode (If Equipped)
Refer to the "Satellite Radio" section of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES) (If Equipped)
Refer to separate "Video Entertainment System (VES) Guide."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SALES CODE REC — AM/FM/CD (6–DISC) RADIO WITH NAVIGATION SYSTEM



REC Radio

Satellite Navigation Radio with CD Player with MP3 Capability (REC) - combines a Global-Positioning System-based navigation system with an integrated color screen to provide maps, turn identification, selection menus and instructions for selecting a variety of destinations and routes, AM/FM stereo radio and six-disc CD changer with MP3 capability.

Mapping information for navigation is supplied on a DVD that is loaded into the unit. One map DVD covers all of North America. Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for detailed operating instructions.

Operating Instructions — Satellite Radio (If Equipped)

Refer to your "Navigation User's Manual" for detailed operating instructions.

REC Setting the Clock

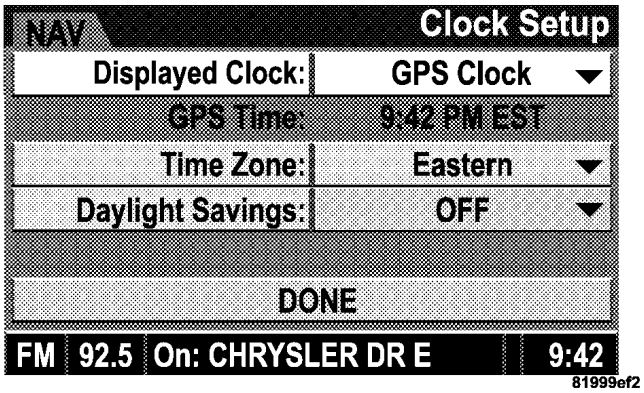
GPS Clock

The GPS receiver used in this system is synchronized to the time data being transmitted by the GPS satellites. The satellites' clock is Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). This is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the worldwide standard for time. This makes the system's clock very accurate once the appropriate time zone and daylight savings information is set.

1. At the **Main Menu** screen, highlight "Clock Setup" and press ENTER **OR** press and hold for 3 seconds the TIME button on the unit's faceplate. The **Clock Setup** screen appears.



2. To show the GPS clock, select "Displayed Clock: GPS Clock" and press ENTER.

3. To adjust the time zone, Select "Time Zone" and press ENTER. Select the appropriate time zone and press ENTER.

4. To turn daylight savings on or off, select "Daylight Savings" and press ENTER. Select "On" or "Off" and press ENTER.

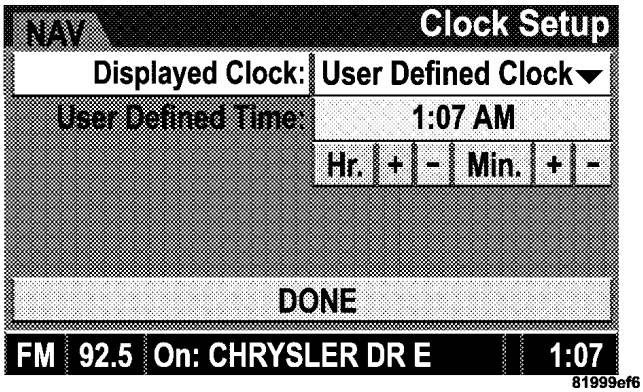
5. Select DONE to exit from the clock setting mode. Press ENTER to save your changes. If you press CANCEL or NAV then your changes will not be saved.

User Defined Clock

If you wish to set the clock to a time different than the system clock, you can manually adjust the time by choosing the "User Defined Clock" option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. At the **Clock Setup** screen highlight "Displayed Clock: User Defined Clock".



2. To increase the clock by hours, make sure "HR +" is highlighted and press ENTER. Press ENTER again to increase the clock by another hour. You will see on the "User Defined Time" display the number of hours you have increased the clock by.

3. To decrease the clock by one hour, use the Select Encoder to highlight the "-" sign. Press ENTER. Press ENTER again to decrease the clock by another hour.

4. To increase the clock by minutes, make sure "MIN +" is highlighted and press ENTER. Press ENTER again to increase the clock by another minute.

5. To decrease the clock by minutes, use the Select Encoder to highlight the "-" sign. Press ENTER. Press ENTER again to decrease the clock by another minute.

6. Select "DONE" to exit from the clock setting mode. Press ENTER to save your changes. If you press CANCEL or NAV then your changes will not be saved.

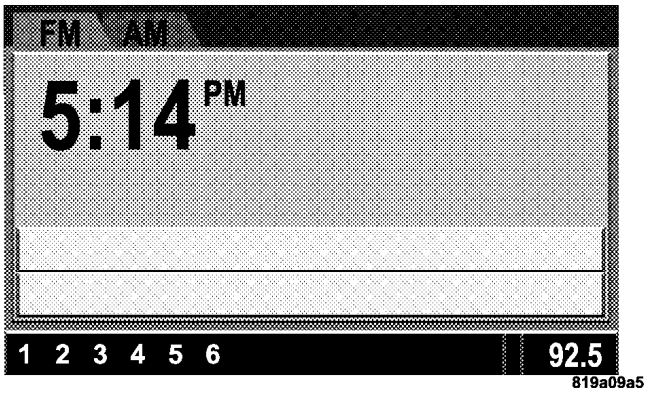
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio Clock Display

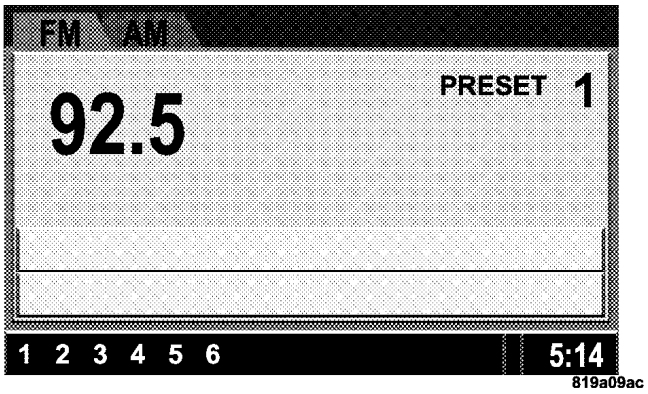
Select this option to change the size of the clock on the audio screens.

1. When you are at an audio screen, quickly press the TIME button on the navigation faceplate.

2. In this example the large clock appears on the screen.



3. To switch the clock to the small clock, quickly press TIME again.



4. To toggle back to the large clock, simply press TIME.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VIDEO ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEM (SALES CODE XRV) — IF EQUIPPED

The optional VES™ (Video Entertainment System) consists of a DVD player and LCD (liquid crystal display) screen, a battery-powered remote control, and two headsets. The system is located in the headliner behind the front row seat. Refer to your VES™ User's Manual for detailed operating instructions.

SATELLITE RADIO — IF EQUIPPED

Satellite radio uses direct satellite to receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius™ Satellite Radio. This service offers over 100 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

System Activation

Sirius Satellite Radio service is pre-activated, and you may begin listening immediately to the one year of SIRIUS audio service that is included with the factory-installed satellite radio system in your vehicle. Sirius will contact you to supply a welcome kit and to confirm subscription information, including the set up of your on-line listening account at no additional charge. For further information, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at www.sirius.com. Please have the following information available when calling:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).

2. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)

The Electronic Serial Number / Sirius Identification Number is needed to activate your Sirius Satellite Radio system. To access the ESN / SID, refer to the following steps:

ESN/SID Access with REF Radios

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and Time buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The first four digits of the twelve-digit ESN / SID number will display. Press the SEEK UP button to display the next four digits. Continue to press the SEEK UP button until all twelve ESN / SID digits display. The SEEK DOWN will page down until the first four digits display. The radio will exit the ESN / SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or 5 minutes has passed since any button was pushed.

ESN/SID Access with RAQ and RAK Radios

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and TIME buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. All twelve ESN / SID numbers will display. The radio will exit the ESN / SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or 5 minutes has passed since any button was pushed.

ESN/SID Access with REC Navigation Radios

Please refer to your Navigation User's Manual.

With the ignition in the ACCESSORY position and the radio off, press the CD Eject and Set buttons simultaneously until the 12 digits of the ESN / SID appear on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting Satellite Mode in REF, RAQ, and RAK Radios

Selecting Satellite Mode — REF Radio

Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SAT″ appears in the display.

A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting Satellite Mode — RAQ and RAK Radio

Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SAT″ appears in the display.

These radios will also display the current station name and program type. For more information, such as song title and artist, press the MSG or INFO button.

A CD or tape may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting a Channel

Press and release the SEEK or TUNE knob to search for the next channel. Press the top of the button to search up and the bottom of the button to search down. Holding the TUNE button causes the radio to bypass channels until the button is released.

Press and release the SCAN button (if equipped) to automatically change channels every 7 seconds. The radio will pause on each channel for 7 seconds before moving on to the next channel. The word ″SCAN″ will appear in the display between each channel change. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Channels that may contain objectionable content can be blocked. Contact Sirius Customer Care at 888-539-7474 to discuss options for channel blocking or unblocking. Please have your ESN / SID information available.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storing and Selecting Pre-Set Channels

In addition to the 12 AM and 12 FM pre-set stations, you may also commit 12 satellite stations to push button memory. These satellite channel pre-set stations will not erase any AM or FM pre-set memory stations. Follow the memory pre-set procedures that apply to your radio.

Using the PTY (Program Type) Button — If Equipped

Follow the PTY button instructions that apply to your radio.

PTY Button ″SCAN″

When the desired program type is obtained, press the ″SCAN″ button within five seconds. The radio will play 7 seconds of the selected channel before moving to the next channel of the selected program type. Press the ″SCAN″ button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Pressing the ″SEEK″ or ″SCAN″ button, while performing a music type scan, will change the channel by one and stop the search. Pressing a pre-set memory button during a music type scan, will call up the memory channel and stop the search.

PTY Button ″SEEK″

When the desired program is obtained, press the ″SEEK″ button within five seconds. The channel will change to the next channel that matches the program type selected.

Satellite Antenna

To ensure optimum reception on vehicles available with a luggage rack, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location. Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items should be placed as far forward as possible. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

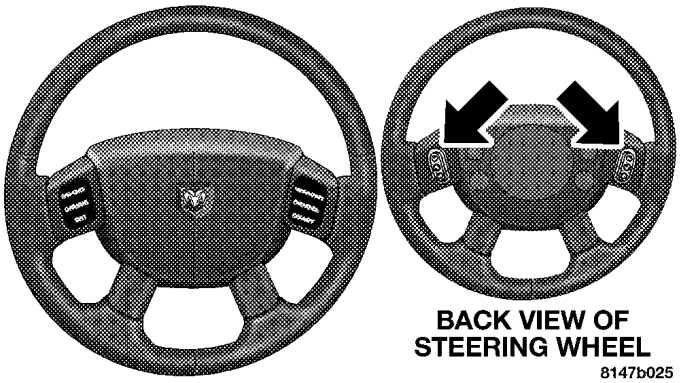
Reception Quality

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons.

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

REMOTE SOUND SYSTEM CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



Remote Sound System Controls

The right hand control is a rocker type switch with a button in the center. Pressing the top of the switch will increase the volume and pressing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume. The center button of the right hand control will allow you to change the mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The left hand control is a rocker type switch with a push button in the center. The function of the left hand control is different depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left hand control operation in each mode.

Radio Operation

Pressing the top of the left side switch will SEEK up for the next listenable station and pressing the bottom of the switch will SEEK down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set push-buttons.

Tape Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next selection on the cassette. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current selection or to the beginning of the previous selection if it is within the first 5 seconds of the current selection.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second selection, three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left hand switch has no function in this mode.

CD Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within one second after the current track begins to play.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second track, three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left hand switch has no function in this mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CASSETTE TAPE AND PLAYER MAINTENANCE

To keep the cassette tapes and player in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Do not use cassette tapes longer than C-90; otherwise, sound quality and tape durability will be greatly diminished.

2. Keep the cassette tape in its case to protect from slackness and dust when it is not in use.

3. Keep the cassette tape away from direct sunlight, heat and magnetic fields such as the radio speakers.

4. Before inserting a tape, make sure that the label is adhering flatly to the cassette.

5. A loose tape should be corrected before use. To rewind a loose tape, insert the eraser end of a pencil into the tape drive gear and twist the pencil in the required directions.

Maintain your cassette tape player. The head and capstan shaft in the cassette player can pick up dirt or tape deposits each time a cassette is played. The result of deposits on the capstan shaft may cause the tape to wrap around and become lodged in the tape transport. The other adverse condition is low or "muddy" sound from one or both channels, as if the treble tone control were turned all the way down. To prevent this, you should periodically clean the head with a commercially available WET cleaning cassette.

As preventive maintenance, clean the head about every 30 hours of use. If you wait until the head becomes very dirty (noticeably poor sound), it may not be possible to remove all deposits with a simple WET cleaning cassette.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COMPACT DISC MAINTENANCE

To keep the compact discs in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.

2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.

4. Do not use solvents such as benzene, thinner, cleaners, or antistatic sprays.

5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.

7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

NOTE: If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged, oversized, or have theft protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

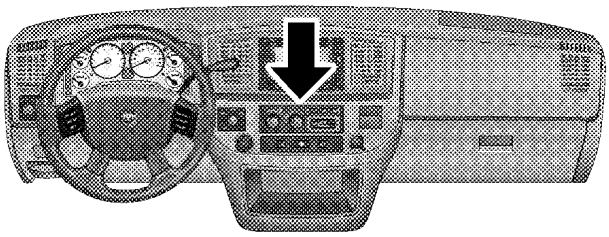
RADIO OPERATION AND CELLULAR PHONES

Under certain conditions, the operation of a cellular phone in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the cellular phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during cellular phone operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CLIMATE CONTROLS

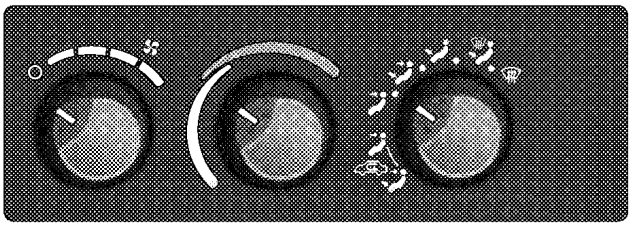
The controls for the heating and ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.



8164639b

Climate Control Location

Heater Only — If Equipped



81646397

Manual Heating Controls

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

816463c5

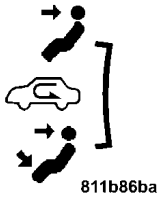
The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)


811b86ba

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke or odors. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel outlets in this mode. Air flows through the panel only or through both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Mix

Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

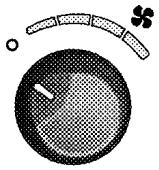
4

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel.

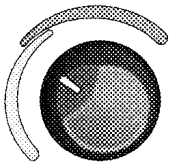
Blower Control



816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Temperature Control

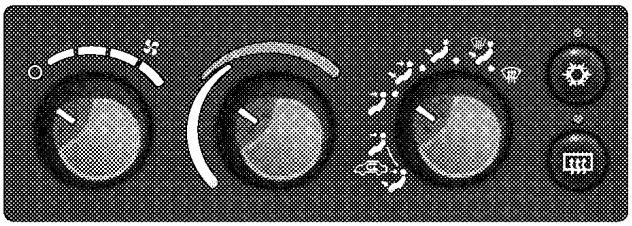


816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Conditioning and Heating — If Equipped



81646393

Air Conditioning And Heating

Air Conditioning Operation

To turn on the Air Conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located at the right of the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

Slight changes in engine speed or power may be noticed when the air conditioning compressor is on. This is a normal occurrence as the compressor will cycle on and off to maintain comfort and increase fuel economy.

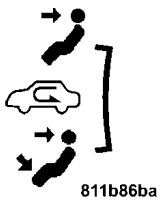
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

816463c5

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)


811b86ba

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains smoke, odors, high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel only or through both the panel and floor vents depending on the selected mode (panel vs bi-level).

NOTE: Selecting a "Recirculation Mode" mode does not necessarily consume more fuel than normal A/C mode.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Floor

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

Mix

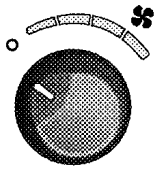
Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets, and the air conditioning may be on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Defrost

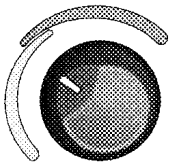
Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel, and the air conditioning may be on.

Blower Control


816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Temperature Control


816463c9

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Circulation

The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct air flow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper

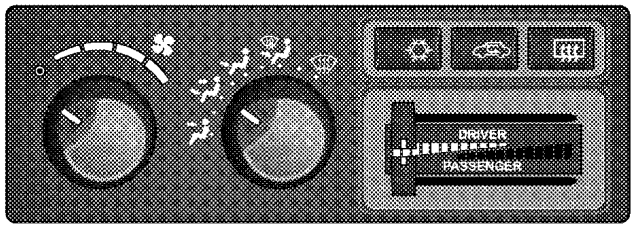
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use. To remove frost from the side windows, it is best to use the full defrost mode.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Air Conditioning with Dual Zone Temperature Control — If Equipped

With the Dual Zone Temperature Control System, each front seat occupant can independently control the temperature of air coming from the outlets on their side of the vehicle.



8164638f

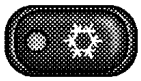
Dual Zone Control Head

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Conditioning and Heating Operation

To turn on the Air Conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located on the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

A/C Pushbutton



80d0bd96

With the fan control in the ON position, pushing the A/C button turns on the air conditioning compressor. An indicator light on the button shows that the Air Conditioning compressor is on. Conditioned air is now directed through the mode outlets selected. Pushing the button a second time turns the compressor OFF.

Recirculation Pushbutton

811b86fe

Pushing the Recirculation button allows interior air to recirculate continuously in any position except defrost and defrost/floor mode for rapid cool down of the interior. See "Fast Cooldown" later in this section.

Mode Control

816463c5

The mode control allows you to choose from several patterns of air distribution.

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots and give an even blend of both modes.

Panel

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel. These outlets can be adjusted to direct the airflow.

Bi-Level

Air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and those located on the floor.

NOTE: There is a difference in temperature between the upper and lower outlets for added comfort. The warmer air goes to the floor outlets. This feature gives improved comfort during sunny but cool conditions.

Heat

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

Mix

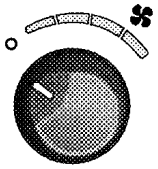
Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield and side window demist outlets.

NOTE: The air conditioning compressor operates in both Mix and Defrost or a blend of these modes, even if the A/C button has not been pressed. This dehumidifies the air to help dry the windshield.

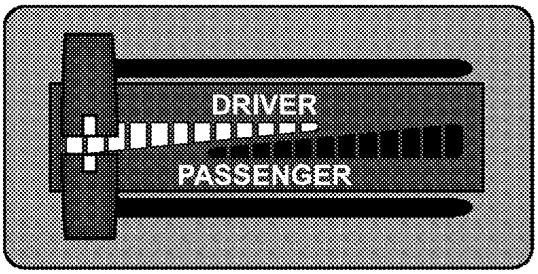
Blower Control


816463cd

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire. To turn the blower off, turn the knob to the far left position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Zone Temperature Control



816463c0

Dual Zone Temperature Control

Use this control to regulate the temperature of the air inside the passenger compartment. This is accomplished by having separate temperature control slides for both the driver and front passenger. The blue area of the scale indicates cooler temperatures while the red area indicates warmer temperatures.

Circulation

The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct air flow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating Tips

Fast Cooldown

For a fast cooldown, turn the blower fan rotary knob to the extreme right position, turn the mode control to the panel fresh position, press the snowflake button to turn on the air conditioning, and drive with the windows open for the first few minutes. Once the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and press the recirculation push-button, on dual zone control or switch the mode from panel/fresh to panel/recirculate on single zone control. When a comfortable condition has been reached, choose a mode position and adjust the temperature control slide and blower speed as necessary to maintain comfort. For high humidity conditions it may be necessary to remain in the Recirculation mode to maintain comfort.

Window Fogging

Windows will fog on the inside when the humidity inside the vehicle is high. This often occurs in mild or cool temperatures when it's rainy or humid. In most cases turning on the Air-conditioning (pressing the snowflake button) will clear the fog. Adjust the temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort.

As the temperature gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield by using MIX Mode position on the control. Adjust the temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. Interior fogging on the windshield can be quickly removed by selecting the defrost mode.

Regular cleaning of the inside of the windows with a non-filming cleaning solution (vinegar and water works very well) will help prevent contaminates (cigarette smoke, perfumes, etc.) from sticking to the windows. Contaminates increase the rate of window fogging.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Summer Operation

Air conditioned vehicles must be protected with a high quality antifreeze coolant during summer to provide proper corrosion protection and to raise the boiling point of the coolant for protection against overheating. A 50 % concentration is recommended. Refer to Recommended Fluids and Genuine Parts for the proper coolant type.

When using the air conditioner in extremely heavy traffic in hot weather especially when towing a trailer, additional engine cooling may be required. If this situation is encountered, operate the transmission in a lower gear to increase engine RPM, coolant flow and fan speed. When stopped in heavy traffic, it may be necessary to shift into NEUTRAL and depress the accelerator slightly for fast idle operation to increase coolant flow and fan speed.

NOTE: On models equipped with Diesel engines, the idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at elevated coolant temperatures to improve engine cooling.

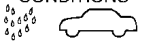
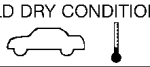
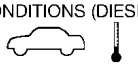
Your air conditioning system is also equipped with an automatic recirculation system. When the system senses a heavy load or high heat conditions, it may use partial Recirculation A/C mode to provide additional comfort.

Winter Operation

When operating the system during the winter months, make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of ice, slush, snow, or other obstructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating Tips Chart

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
HOT WEATHER AND VEHICLE INTERIOR IS VERY HOT	Start the vehicle, open the windows and turn the blower control knob to the high position (full clockwise). Set Mode control knob at or between and . Set temperature control to full cold and press the button on. After the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and turn the mode control knob to the setting (counterclockwise) at either or , or press the button (if so equipped). Once comfortable, choose a mode position and adjust temperature control and blower speed as necessary for comfort.
WARM WEATHER	If sunny, set the Mode control at or near and press the button on. If cloudy or dark, set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COOL OR COLD HUMID CONDITIONS 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , then press the button on. If cloudy or dark set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COLD DRY CONDITIONS 	In cloudy or dark weather set the Mode control at or near . If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , and for snowy or very cold weather requiring extra heat to the windshield, use .
EXTREME COLD CONDITIONS (DIESEL) 	Using re-circulated air can aid initial warm-up in extreme cold conditions. **NOTICE: Running in /MAX for long periods of time will result in window fogging. When this occurs, use until windows clear. This will deactivate /MAX. SINGLE ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at + /MAX, close the panel vents and set the temperature control to full hot. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase. **DUAL ZONE VEHICLES:** Set the mode control at , set both temperature controls to full hot and press the /MAX button. Turn blower control knob to low and gradually increase as air and engine temperature increase.
WINDOW FOGGING	In most cases turning on the Air-Conditioning (press the button) will clear the fog, then adjust temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort. As it gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield. If so, set the Mode control at or and adjust temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. 8159dfbc

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STARTING AND OPERATING

CONTENTS

■ Starting Procedures – Gas Engines 252
- □ Manual Transmission – If Equipped 252
- □ Automatic Transmission – If Equipped 252
- □ Normal Starting 253
- □ If Engine Fails To Start 253
- □ After Starting 255

■ Starting Procedures – Diesel Engines 255
- □ Manual Transmission – If Equipped 256
- □ Automatic Transmission – If Equipped 256
- □ Normal Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Above 66°F (19°C) 257
- □ Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66°F (19°C) 258
- □ Starting Fluids 261

■ Normal Operation – Diesel Engine 262
- □ Cold Weather Precautions 263
- □ Engine Idling — In Cold Weather 266
- □ Stopping The Engine 267
- □ Engine Speed Control 268

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Operating Precautions 268
- □ Cooling System Tips — Automatic Transmission 268

■ Engine Block Heater (Gas Engines)— If Equipped 270

■ Diesel Exhaust Brake (Engine Braking) – If Equipped 270

■ Automatic Transmission 273

- □ Automatic Transmission With Overdrive (5 Speed 545RFE) — If Equipped 273
- □ Automatic Transmission (6 Speed AS68RC) — If Equipped 279

■ Manual Transmission 285

- □ Manual Transmission — 6 Speed (G56) 286
- □ Recommended Vehicle Shift Speeds 287
- □ Downshifting – Gas Engine 288
- □ Downshifting – Diesel Engine 288

■ Four-Wheel-Drive Operation — If Equipped 289

- □ Manually Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions 289
- □ Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case 292
- □ Transfer Case Reminder Light 293
- □ Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions (4 Position Switch) — If Equipped 294
- □ Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case 298

■ Limited-Slip Differential — If Equipped 301

■ Power Take Off Operation – If Equipped 302

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Stationary Mode 302
- □ Mobile Mode 303
- □ Power Take Off – Aftermarket Installation 304
- ■ Driving On Slippery Surfaces 304
- ■ Driving Through Water 305
- □ Flowing/Rising Water 305
- □ Shallow Standing Water 305
- ■ Driving Off-Road 307
- ■ Parking Brake 308
- ■ Brake System 309
- □ Brake Noise 310
- □ Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System 310
- ■ Power Steering 312
- ■ Tire Safety Information 313
- □ Tire Markings 313
- □ Tire Identification Number (TIN) 317
- □ Tire Loading And Tire Pressure 318
- ■ Tires — General Information 322
- □ Tire Pressure 322
- □ Tire Inflation Pressures 323
- □ Radial-Ply Tires 328
- □ Limited Use Spare — If Equipped 329
- □ Tire Spinning 329
- □ Tread Wear Indicators 330
- □ Life Of Tire 331
- □ Replacement Tires 331

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Alignment And Balance 332
- ■ Supplemental Tire Pressure Information — If Equipped 333
- ■ Tire Chains 333
- ■ Snow Tires 334
- ■ Tire Rotation Recommendations 335
  - □ Dual Rear Wheels 336
- ■ Engine Runaway 337
- ■ Fuel Requirements 337
  - □ Fuel Requirements (5.7L Gas Engines) 337
  - □ Fuel Requirements (6.7L Diesel Engines) 341
- ■ Adding Fuel 343
  - □ Adding Fuel (Gas Engines) 343
  - □ Adding Fuel (Diesel Engines) 345
- ■ Vehicle Loading 347
  - □ Certification Label 347
- ■ Trailer Towing 351
  - □ Common Towing Definitions 351
  - □ Trailer Hitch Classification 355
  - □ Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) 356
  - □ Trailer And Tongue Weight 356
  - □ Towing Requirements 357
  - □ Towing Tips 362
  - □ Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped 364
- ■ Snowplow 365

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Before Plowing 366
- Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability . .366
- Over The Road Operation With Snowplow Attached 367
- Methods For Removing Snow 367
- Operating Tips 368
- General Maintenance 368

■ Recreational Towing (Behind Motorhome, Etc.) 369
- Recreational Towing – 2 Wheel Drive Models 369
- Recreational Towing – 4 Wheel Drive Models 369

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STARTING PROCEDURES – GAS ENGINES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

WARNING!

Be sure to turn off the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch if you want to rest or sleep in your car. Accidents can be caused by inadvertently moving the gear selection lever or by pressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause excessive heat in the exhaust system, resulting in overheating and vehicle fire which may cause serious or fatal injuries.

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Apply the parking brake, place the gearshift control lever in NEUTRAL and depress the clutch pedal to the floor before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch is fully depressed.

Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Start the engine with the selector lever in NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

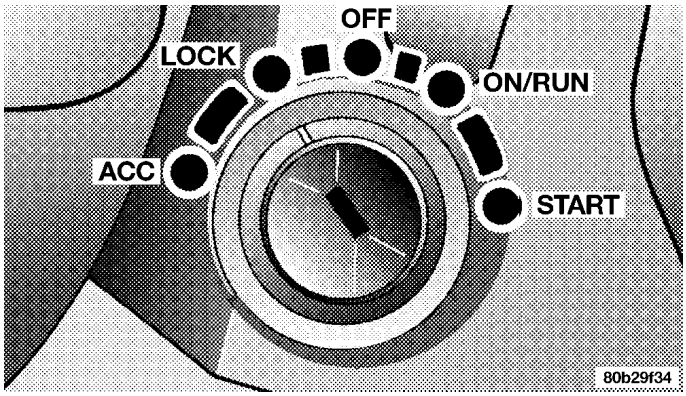
Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or depressing the accelerator pedal. Turn the key to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, turn the key to the OFF position, wait 5 seconds, then repeat the starting procedure.

NOTE: This vehicle is equipped with a transmission shift interlocking system. The brake pedal must be depressed to shift out of Park (P).

Tip Start Feature — Automatic Transmission Only

Do not press the accelerator. Turn the ignition key briefly to START position, and release it. The starter motor will continue to run, but will automatically disengage itself when the engine is running.



Ignition Key Positions

If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the normal starting procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while cranking the engine. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

WARNING!

Never pour fuel or other flammable liquids into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire causing serious personal injury.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle. If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. See section 6 of this manual for the proper jump starting procedures and follow them carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after two 15 second periods of cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, the normal starting procedure should be repeated.

After Starting

The idle speed is automatically controlled and will decrease as the engine warms up.

STARTING PROCEDURES – DIESEL ENGINES

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few minutes between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

WARNING!

Be sure to turn off the engine and remove the key from the ignition switch if you want to rest or sleep in your car. Accidents can be caused by inadvertently moving the gear selection lever or by pressing the accelerator pedal. This may cause excessive heat in the exhaust system, resulting in overheating and vehicle fire which may cause serious or fatal injuries.

5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

Manual Transmission – If Equipped

Apply the parking brake, place the gearshift control lever in NEUTRAL and depress the clutch pedal to the floor before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch is fully depressed.

Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Start the engine with the selector lever in NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

The Cummins Diesel engine is equipped with several features designed to assist cold weather starting and operation:

- The engine block heater is a resistance heater installed in the water jacket of the engine just above and behind the oil filter. It requires a 110–115 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

NOTE: The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized Mopar® dealer.

- A 12–volt heater built into the fuel filter housing aids in preventing fuel gelling. It is controlled by a built-in thermostat.
- A heated intake air system both improves engine starting and reduces the amount of white smoke generated by a warming engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Normal Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Above 66°F (19°C)

Observe the Instrument Panel Cluster lights when starting the engine.

1. Always apply the parking brake.

2. Shift into PARK for an automatic transmission. Fully depress and hold the clutch and shift into NEUTRAL for a manual transmission. Models with manual transmission are equipped with a clutch interlocking cranking system. The clutch must be fully depressed to start the vehicle.

3. Turn the ignition key to the ON position and look at the instrument panel cluster lamps.

CAUTION!

If WATER IN FUEL indicator light remains on DO NOT START engine before you drain water from the fuel filter to avoid engine damage. See Section 7 — Maintaining Your Vehicle, for water drain procedures.

4. Turn the ignition key to START and crank the engine. Do not press the accelerator during starting.

CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time as starter motor damage may result. Turn key to OFF and wait at least two minutes before trying again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. When the engine starts, release the key.
6. Check to see that there is oil pressure.
7. Release the parking brake.

Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66°F (19°C)

NOTE: The temperature displayed on the overhead console (if equipped) does not necessarily reflect the engine manifold air temperature. When certain engine temperatures fall below 66°F (19°C) the lamp will remain on indicating the intake manifold heater system is active.

Follow the steps in the Normal Starting Procedure except:

CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time or starter motor damage may result. Turn key to OFF and wait at least 2 minutes for starter to cool before repeating start procedure.

- The WAIT TO START light will remain on for a period of time (length of time depends on engine temperature).
- After the WAIT TO START light goes off, turn the ignition key to START. Do not press the accelerator during starting.
  - After engine start-up, check to see that there is oil pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Allow the engine to idle about three minutes until the manifold heaters have completed the post-heat cycle.
- Release the parking brake and drive.

NOTE: Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.

NOTE: If the engine stalls or if the ignition switch is left On for more than 2 minutes after the WAIT TO START light goes out, reset the grid heaters by turning the ignition switch to Off for at least 5 seconds and then back On. Repeat steps 3 through 7 of the normal starting procedure.

For Extremely Cold Weather Starting — Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 0°F (- 18°C)

In extremely cold weather below 0°F (- 18°C) it may be beneficial to cycle the manifold heaters twice before attempting to start the engine. This can be accomplished by turning the ignition OFF for at least 5 seconds and then back ON after the WAIT TO START light has gone off, but before the engine is started. However, repeated cycling of the manifold heaters will result in damage to the heater elements or reduced battery voltage.

NOTE: If multiple pre-heat cycles are used before starting, additional engine run time may be required to maintain battery state of charge at a satisfactory level.

- If the engine stalls after the initial start, the ignition must be turned to the OFF position for at least 5 seconds and then to the ON position to recycle the manifold heaters.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Excessive white smoke and poor engine performance will result if manifold heaters are not recycled.

- Heat generated by the manifold heaters dissipates rapidly in a cold engine. If more than two minutes pass between the time the WAIT TO START light goes OFF and the engine is started, recycle the manifold heaters by turning the ignition OFF for at least 5 seconds and then back ON.
- If the vehicle is driven and vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (31 km) before the manifold heater post-heat (after start) cycle is complete, the manifold heaters will shut off.
- If the engine is started before the WAIT TO START light turns off, the preheat cycle will turn off.
- If the engine is cranked for more than 10 seconds, the post-heat cycle will turn off.

NOTE: Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1000 rpm at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.

NOTE: When a diesel engine is allowed to run out of fuel or the fuel gels at low temperatures, air is pulled into the fuel system.

You may try priming as described below.

1. Add a substantial quantity of fuel to the tank (5 to 10 gallons) or eliminate the gelled fuel condition.

2. Crank the engine for 1 to 2 seconds. If the engine does not start, then release the key or starter button back to the RUN position (do not turn the key back to the OFF position). The electric fuel transfer pump will continue to run and purge air from the system for about 20 seconds. After 20 seconds, attempt to start the engine again.

3. Start the engine using the Normal Starting Procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Repeat the procedure if the engine does not start.

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system when cranking the engine or with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

NOTE: The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.

Starting Fluids

WARNING!

STARTING FLUIDS or flammable liquids are NEVER TO BE USED in the Cummins Diesel (see Warning label). Never pour diesel fuel, flammable liquid, starting fluids (ether) into the air cleaner canister, air intake piping, or turbocharger inlet in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in a flash fire and explosion causing serious personal injury and engine damage.

The engine is equipped with an automatic electric air preheating system. If the instructions in this manual are followed, the engine should start in all conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

NORMAL OPERATION – DIESEL ENGINE

Observe the following when the engine is operating.

- All message center lights are off.
- Check Engine Lamp is off.
- Engine Oil Pressure is above 10 psi (69 kPa) at idle.
- Low Oil Pressure light is off.
- Voltmeter Operation:
  - The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.
  - The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlamps, interior lamps, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

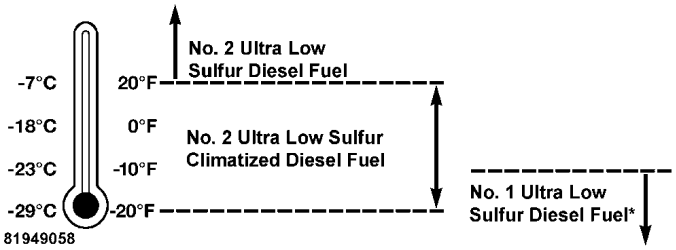
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cold Weather Precautions

Operation in ambient temperature below 32°F (0°C) may require special considerations. The following charts suggest these options:

Fuel Operating Range

NOTE: Use "Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuels" **ONLY.**



*No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel should only be used where extended arctic conditions (-10°F/-23°C) exist.

NOTE:

- Use of Climatized Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel or Number 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel results in a noticeable decrease in fuel economy.
- Climatized Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel is a blend of Number 2 Ultra Low Sulfur and Number 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuels which reduces the temperature at which wax crystals form in fuel.

NOTE: The engine requires the use of **"Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel Fuel"**. Use of incorrect fuel could result in engine and exhaust system damage. Refer to Fuel Requirements in this section for further details on fuel recommendations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Block Heater

The engine block heater warms engine coolant and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the heater cord to a ground–fault interrupter protected 110–115 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

The engine block heater cord is routed under the hood to the right side and can be located just behind the grille near the headlamp.

NOTE: The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized Mopar® dealer.

The block heater must be plugged in at least one hour to have an adequate warming effect on the coolant.

WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110–115 volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

NOTE: The block heater will require 110 Volts AC and 6.5 Amps to activate the heater element.

Block Heater Usage

A. **Temperatures below 0°F (-18°C)**

- Block Heater Required for 15W-40
- Block Heater Recommended for 5W-40

B. **Temperatures below - 20°F (-29°C)**

- Block Heater Required for 5W-40

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter Front Usage

If a winter front or cold weather cover is to be used, a percentage of the total grille opening area must be left uncovered to provide sufficient air flow to the charge air cooler and automatic transmission oil cooler. The percentage of opening must be increased with the increasing ambient air temperature and/or engine load. If the cooling fan can be heard cycling frequently, increase the size of the opening in the winter front. A suitable cold weather cover is available from your Mopar® dealer.

Battery Blanket Usage

A battery loses 60% of its cranking power as the battery temperature decreases to 0°F (-18°). For the same decrease in temperature, the engine requires twice as much power to crank at the same RPM. The use of 120 VAC powered battery blankets will greatly increase starting capability at low temperatures. Suitable battery blankets are available from your authorized Mopar® dealer.

Arctic Operation

Where there are no provisions to keep the engine warm when it is operating in ambient temperatures consistently below (-10°F/-23°C), use 5W-40 **synthetic** engine oil and fuel that meets the requirements in Section 7, "Maintenance Procedures," Engine Oil Selection.

Engine Warm-Up

Avoid full throttle operation when the engine is cold. When starting a cold engine, bring the engine up to operating speed slowly to allow the oil pressure to stabilize as the engine warms up.

NOTE: High-speed, no-load running of a cold engine can result in excessive white smoke and poor engine performance. No-load engine speeds should be kept under 1,200 rpm during the warm-up period, especially in cold ambient temperature conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If temperatures are below 32°F (0°C), operate the engine at moderate speeds for 5 minutes before full loads are applied.

Engine Idling — In Cold Weather

Avoid prolonged idling in ambient temperatures below 0°F. Long periods of idling may be harmful to your engine because combustion chamber temperatures can drop so low that the fuel may not burn completely. Incomplete combustion allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the oil and causing rapid wear to the engine. Excessive idle time can also cause damage to the engine exhaust aftertreatment system.

NOTE: An optional driver-controlled high idle speed is available on automatic transmission equipped vehicles with speed control. This feature allows the driver to select an elevated idle speed between 1100 and 1500 rpms. Your dealer can enable this feature.

NOTE:

- If ambient temperatures are low and the coolant temperature is below 200°F (93°C), the engine idle speed will slowly increase to 1000 RPM after 2 minutes of idle, if the following conditions are met:
- foot is off brake pedal and throttle pedal
- automatic transmission is in Park (P)
- vehicle speed is zero
- Applying the throttle will cancel fast idle
- If the engine is equipped with an exhaust brake, operating the exhaust brake at idle will greatly improve warm up rate and will help keep the engine close to operating temperature during extended idle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Stopping The Engine

Idle the engine a few minutes before routine shutdown. After full load operation, idle the engine 3 to 5 minutes before shutting it down. This idle period will allow the lubricating oil and coolant to carry excess heat away from the combustion chamber, bearings, internal components, and turbocharger. This is especially important for turbocharged, charge air cooled engines.

NOTE: During engine shut down on vehicles equipped with manual transmissions, it is normal for the diesel engine to resonate heavily for a moment during engine shut off. When the engine is connected to a manual transmission, this resonance causes load gear rattle from the transmission. This is commonly referred to as “shut down rattle”. The manufacturer recommends performing engine shut down with the clutch pedal pushed to the floor (clutch disengaged). When engine shut down is performed in this manner the rattle is reduced (not eliminated).

Driving Condition	Load	Turbo-charger Temperature	Idle Time (min.) Before Engine Shutdown
Stop and Go	Empty	Cool	Less than One
Stop and Go	Medium		One
Highway Speeds	Medium	Warm	Two
City Traffic	Maximum GCWR		Three
Highway Speeds	Maximum GCWR		Four
Uphill Grade	Maximum GCWR	Hot	Five

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Speed Control

CAUTION!

Prevent overspeeding the engine going down hill. When descending steep grades, use a combination of gears and service brakes to control vehicle/engine speed. Overspeed can cause severe engine damage.

Operating Precautions

Avoid Overheating The Engine

The temperature of the coolant (a mixture of 50% ethylene-glycol and 50% water) must not exceed the normal range of the temperature gauge (240°F/116°C) with a 16 psi (110 kPa) radiator cap.

Usually the coolant temperature indicated during operation will be to the left of center in the normal range of the gauge.

Avoid Low Coolant Temperature Operation

Continual operation at low coolant temperature below the normal range on the gauge (140°F/60°C) can be harmful to the engine. Low coolant temperature can cause incomplete combustion which allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the lubricating oil and causing rapid wear to the engine.

Cooling System Tips — Automatic Transmission

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating in high ambient temperature conditions, take the following actions:

- ***City Driving —***

when stopped, put transmission in neutral and increase engine idle speed.

- ***Highway Driving —***

reduce your speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ***Up Steep Hills —***

select a lower transmission gear, but try and keep the torque converter clutch engaged.

- ***Air Conditioning —***

turn it off temporarily.

Do Not Operate The Engine With Low Oil Pressure

When the engine is at normal operating temperature, the minimum oil pressures required are:

Idle 700 to 800 RPM . . . . . 10 psi (69 kPa)
Full speed and load . . . . . 30 psi (207 kPa)

CAUTION!

If oil pressure falls to less than normal readings, shut the engine off immediately. Failure to do so could result in immediate and severe engine damage.

Do Not Operate The Engine With Failed Parts

Practically all failures give some warning before the parts fail. Be on the alert for changes in performance, sounds, and visual evidence that the engine requires service. Some important clues are:

- engine misfiring or vibrating severely
- sudden loss of power
- unusual engine noises
- fuel, oil or coolant leaks
- sudden change, outside the normal operating range, in the engine operating temperature
- excessive smoke
- oil pressure drop

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (GAS ENGINES)— IF EQUIPPED

The engine block heater warms engine coolant and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

The engine block heater cord, on gas engines, is routed under the hood on the driver side of the vehicle. It has a removable cap that is located on the driver side of the Integrated Power Module.

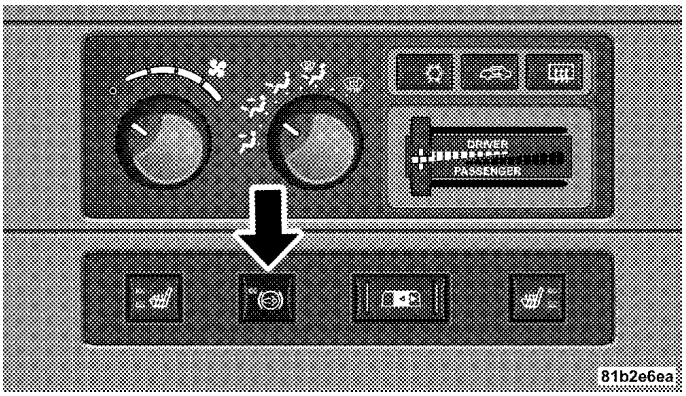
WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

DIESEL EXHAUST BRAKE (ENGINE BRAKING) – IF EQUIPPED

The exhaust brake feature will only function when the driver turns the exhaust brake switch to the on position. Once the switch is in the on position and the vehicle is moving faster than 5 MPH; the exhaust brake will automatically operate when the driver removes pressure from the accelerator pedal. Exhaust braking is most effective when the engine RPM is higher. The automatic transmission has been programmed to downshift more aggressively when the exhaust brake is enabled to increase brake performance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Exhaust Brake Switch

WARNING!

Do not use the Exhaust Brake feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: For optimum braking power it is recommended to use the Exhaust Brake while in Tow / Haul Mode.

The purpose of the exhaust brake (engine braking) feature is to supply negative (braking) torque to the engine. Typically, the engine braking is used for, but not limited to, vehicle towing applications where vehicle braking can be achieved by the internal engine power, thereby sparing the mechanical brakes of the vehicle.

Benefits of the exhaust brake are:

- vehicle driving control
- reduced brake fade
- longer brake life
- faster cab warm-up.

The exhaust brake feature can also be used to reduce the engine warm up time. To use the exhaust brake as a warm-up device, the vehicle must be moving less than 5 MPH, the exhaust brake switch must be in the on position, and the coolant temperature must below 180 F and ambient temperature below 60 F.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the following precautions are not observed:

- **Shift into PARK only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **Shift into or out of REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop and the engine is at idle speed.**
- **Do not shift from REVERSE, PARK, or NEUTRAL into any forward gear when the engine is above idle speed.**
- **Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly on the brake pedal.**

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the selector lever out of "P" or "N" if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

Automatic Transmission with Overdrive (5 Speed 545RFE) — If Equipped

The gear shift selector display, located in the instrument panel cluster, indicates the transmission gear range (the selector is illuminated for night driving). The selector lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must depress the brake pedal, to pull the selector

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

lever out of park (P) position (Brake Interlock System). To drive, move the selector lever from Park or Neutral to the desired drive position. Pull the selector lever toward you when shifting into Reverse, Second, First or Park, or when shifting out of Park.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from Park or Neutral position into another gear range.

"P" Park

This gear position supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never use Park while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range. Always apply parking brake first, then place the selector in Park position. On 4-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position!

WARNING!

Never use Park position on an automatic transmission as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

WARNING!

Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in P (Park). Check by trying to move the gearshift lever back and forth without first pulling it toward you after you have set it in P. Make sure it is in Park before leaving the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the selector lever out of "P" or "N" if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

"R" Reverse

Use this range only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

"N" Neutral

Shift to Neutral when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

"D" Drive

This position provides all forward gears, including 3rd gear direct and 4th or 5th gear overdrive (see Overdrive Operation). Use this range for most city and highway driving.

"2" Second

Use this position for driving slowly in heavy city traffic or on mountain roads where more precise speed control is desirable. Use it also when climbing long grades, and for engine braking when descending moderately steep grades. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h) in this range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"1" First

Use this position for driving up very steep hills and for engine braking at low speeds 20 mph (32 km/h) or less when going downhill. To prevent excessive engine speed, do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle in "2" Second or "1" First gear selections in high ambients as torque converter slip can impose significant additional heat load on the cooling system.

Overdrive Operation

The overdrive automatic transmission contains an electronically controlled fourth and fifth speed (Overdrive). The transmission will automatically shift from Drive to Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the transmission selector is in Drive;
- the engine coolant has reached normal operating temperature;
- vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (48 km/h);
- the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch has not been activated;
- transmission has reached normal operating temperature.

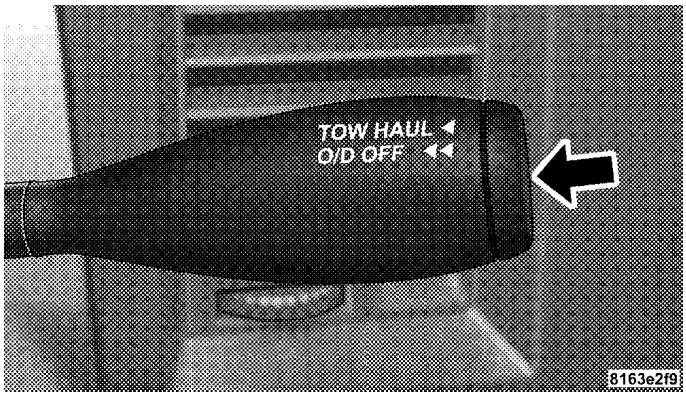
NOTE: If the vehicle is started in extremely cold temperatures, the transmission may not shift into Overdrive and will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. Normal operation will resume when the transmission fluid temperature has risen to a suitable level. Refer also to the Note under torque converter clutch, later in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the transmission temperature gets extremely hot, the transmission will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. If the transmission temperature becomes hot enough the TRANS TEMP light may illuminate and the transmission may downshift out of Overdrive until the transmission cools down. After cooldown, the transmission will resume normal operation.

The transmission will downshift from Overdrive to Drive if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed at vehicle speeds above approximately 35 mph (56 km/h).

When To Use "TOW HAUL" and "O/D OFF" Modes



Tow Haul O/D Off Switch

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button once to select TOW HAUL. This will improve performance and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in "TOW HAUL" mode, 5th gear is disabled and 2-3 and 3-4 shift patterns are modified. Shifts into Overdrive (4th gear) are allowed during steady cruise (for improved fuel economy) and automatic closed-throttle downshifts to 3rd gear (for improved braking) will occur during steady braking. Pressing the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button a second time to select O/D OFF will disable 4th and 5th gear completely, which should eliminate any excessive transmission shifting.

The "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" light will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate when the switch has been activated. Pressing the switch a third time restores normal operation. If the "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" modes are desired, the button must be pressed each time the engine is started.

When To Lock Out Overdrive

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent 4–3–4 transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW/HAUL" button twice to disable the overdrive. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting.

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature, designed to improve fuel economy, has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in high gear. When the vehicle speed drops or during acceleration when the transmission downshifts to second gear, the clutch automatically disengages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The torque converter clutch will not engage until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1-3 miles (1.6 - 4.8 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Pressing the "TOW/HAUL" button, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of overdrive.

NOTE: If the vehicle has not been driven in several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds of shifting from Park into any other gear position.

Automatic Transmission (6 Speed AS68RC) — If Equipped

The gear shift selector display, located in the instrument panel cluster, indicates the transmission gear range (the selector is illuminated for night driving). The selector lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must depress the brake pedal, to pull the selector lever out of park (P) position (Brake Interlock System). To drive, move the selector lever from Park or Neutral to the desired drive position. Pull the selector lever toward you when shifting into Reverse, Second, First or Park, or when shifting out of Park.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from Park or Neutral position into another gear range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"P" Park

This gear position supplements the parking brake by locking the transmission. The engine can be started in this range. Never use Park while the vehicle is in motion. Apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle in this range. Always apply parking brake first, then place the selector in Park position. On 4-wheel drive vehicles be sure that the transfer case is in a drive position!

WARNING!

Never use Park position on an automatic transmission as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

WARNING!

Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in P (Park). Check by trying to move the gearshift lever back and forth without first pulling it toward you after you have set it in P. Make sure it is in Park before leaving the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the selector lever out of "P" or "N" if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

"R" Reverse

Use this range only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

"N" Neutral

Shift to Neutral when the vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with the engine running. The engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

"D" Drive

This position provides all forward gears, including 4th gear direct and 5th or 6th (if equipped) gear overdrive (see Overdrive Operation). Use this range for most city and highway driving.

"3" Third

Use this position for driving in slight heavy city traffic or on mountain roads where more precise speed control is desirable. Use it also when climbing long grades, and for engine braking when descending moderately steep grades. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h) in this range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

"2" Second

Use this position for driving on more severe conditions and lower speeds than "3" third. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

"1" First

Use this position for driving up very steep hills and for engine braking at low speeds 12 mph (19 km/h) or less when going downhill. To prevent excessive engine speed, do not exceed 12 mph (19 km/h) in this range.

NOTE: Use caution when operating a heavily loaded vehicle in "2" Second or "1" First gear selections in high ambients as torque converter slip can impose significant additional heat load on the cooling system.

Overdrive Operation

The overdrive automatic transmission contains an electronically controlled 5th and 6th (if equipped) speed (Overdrive). The transmission will automatically shift from Drive to Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the transmission selector is in Drive;
- the engine coolant has reached normal operating temperature;
- vehicle speed is above approximately 38 mph (61 km/h) for 5th gear and 55 mph (89 km/h) for 6th gear;
- the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" switch has not been activated;
- transmission has reached normal operating temperature.

NOTE: If the vehicle is started in extremely cold temperatures, the transmission shift schedule initially restricts transmission operation in forward gear ranges to 3rd gear until the transmission fluid temperature rises to

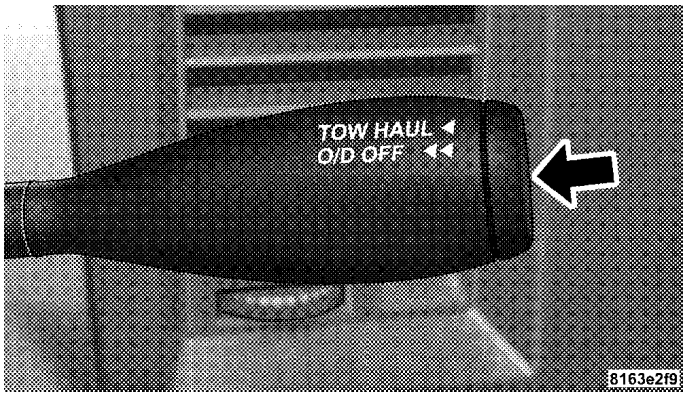
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

a suitable level. During this condition, the ability of the vehicle to accelerate under heavily loaded conditions may be reduced. Refer also to the Note under torque converter clutch, later in this section.

If the transmission temperature gets extremely hot, the transmission will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. If the transmission temperature becomes hot enough the TRANS TEMP light may illuminate and the transmission may downshift out of Overdrive until the transmission cools down. After cooldown, the transmission will resume normal operation.

The transmission will downshift from Overdrive to Drive if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed at vehicle speeds above approximately 37 mph (60 km/h) for 6th to 5th and 29 mph (47 km/h) for 5th to 4th.

When To Use "TOW HAUL" and "O/D OFF" Modes



Tow Haul O/D Off Switch

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button once to select TOW HAUL. This will improve performance and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in "TOW HAUL" mode, 6th gear (if equipped) is disabled and 2-3 and 3-4 and 4–5 shift patterns are modified. Shifts into Overdrive (5th gear) are allowed during steady cruise (for improved fuel economy). Pressing the "TOW HAUL O/D OFF" button a second time to select O/D OFF will disable 5th and 6th gear completely, which should eliminate any excessive transmission shifting.

The "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" light will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate when the switch has been activated. Pressing the switch a third time restores normal operation. If the "TOW HAUL" or "O/D OFF" modes are desired, the button must be pressed each time the engine is started.

WARNING!

Do not use the Tow/Haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control, which may cause an accident possibly resulting in personal injury or death.

When To Lock Out Overdrive

When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent 6–5–6 or 5–4–5 transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW/HAUL" button. This will improve performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature, designed to improve fuel economy, has been included in the automatic transmission on your vehicle. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at calibrated speeds. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in high gear. When the vehicle speed drops or during acceleration when the transmission downshifts to 1st gear, the clutch automatically disengages.

NOTE: The torque converter clutch will not engage until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1-3 miles (1.6 - 4.8 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Pressing the "TOW/HAUL" button, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of overdrive.

NOTE: If the vehicle has not been driven in several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds of shifting from Park into any other gear position.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended without having the parking brake fully applied. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle, especially on an incline.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Truck models with manual transmission are equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the vehicle.

Fully depress the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

To shift into Reverse, come to a complete stop. Depress the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop. Move the shift lever from the Neutral position straight across and back into Reverse.

Never drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, or attempt to hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially engaged, as this will cause abnormal wear on the clutch.

Manual Transmission — 6 Speed (G56)

Your vehicle may be equipped with the G56 manual transmission. This transmission has a “creeper” 1st gear which should be used to start from a standing position when carrying a payload or towing a trailer. Damage to the clutch can result from starting in 2nd or 3rd gear with a loaded vehicle. An unloaded vehicle may be launched in 2nd gear. Use each gear in numerical order – do not skip a gear.

For most city driving you may find it easier to use only 1st through 5th gear ranges. For steady highway driving with light accelerations, 6th gear is recommended. To shift into 5th gear, move the shift lever to the right beyond the spring pressure point and push it forward. When shifting from 5th to 4th gear, pull the lever down toward you in one motion. Do not pull the lever sharply left as you may shift accidentally into 2nd gear and damage the transmission.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To shift into Reverse, come to a complete stop. Depress the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop. Reverse has a “crash-through” lockout feature. Move the shift lever from the Neutral position straight across, in one swift motion, and down into Reverse.

Recommended Vehicle Shift Speeds

To utilize your manual transmission efficiently for both fuel economy and performance, it should be upshifted as listed in recommended shift speed chart. Shift at the vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. Earlier upshifts during cruise conditions (steady speeds) will result in increased fuel economy, and may be used as indicated.

6 Speed Manual Transmission Shift Speeds					
Engine	1 to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
5.7L Gas Engine	15 mph (24 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	40 mph (64 km/h)	45 mph (72 km/h)	50 mph (81 km/h)

6 Speed Manual Transmission Shift Speeds					
Engine	1 to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine	7 mph (11 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	40 mph (64 km/h)	45 mph (72 km/h)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downshifting – Gas Engine

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. For acceleration at speeds less than 20 mph (30 km/h), 2nd gear is recommended.

CAUTION!

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage.

Failure to follow the recommended downshifting speeds may cause the engine to over speed and / or damage the clutch disc even if the clutch pedal is depressed.

To prevent clutch and transmission damage, your vehicle should be downshifted at speeds no greater than those listed in the Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speed chart.

Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speeds

Gear Selection	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
Maximum Speed	20 mph (32 km/h)	35 mph (56 km/h)	55 mph (88 km/h)	75 mph (120 km/h)	85 mph (135 km/h)

Downshifting – Diesel Engine

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. Downshift progressively. Do not skip gears to

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

avoid overspeeding the engine and clutch. For acceleration at speeds less than 15 mph (25 km/h), 2nd gear is recommended.

CAUTION!

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage.

Failure to follow the recommended downshifting speeds may cause the engine to over speed and / or damage the clutch disc even if the clutch pedal is depressed.

To prevent clutch and transmission damage, your vehicle should be downshifted at speeds no greater than those listed in the Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speed chart.

Maximum Recommended Downshifting Speeds

Gear Selection	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
Maximum Speed	10 mph (16 km/h)	19 mph (31 km/h)	32 mph (51 km/h)	50 mph (80 km/h)	68 mph (109 km/h)

FOUR-WHEEL-DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED

Four-Wheel-Drive Dodge Ram Trucks are equipped with either a Manually Shifted transfer case or an Electronically Shifted transfer case. See the operating instructions for your transfer case, located within this section.

Manually Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions

The transfer case provides 4 mode positions - 2 (rear)-wheel-drive high range, 4-wheel-drive high range, neutral, and 4-wheel-drive low range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This transfer case is intended to be driven in the 2-wheel-drive position (2H) for normal street and highway conditions such as dry hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required the transfer case 4H and 4L positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by simply moving the shift lever to the desired positions. The 4H and 4L positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4H and 4L positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The 4-wheel-drive light (4WD), located in the instrument cluster, alerts the driver that the vehicle is in 4-wheel drive and that the front and rear driveshafts are locked together. This light illuminates when the transfer case is shifted to either the 4H or 4L positions. There is no light for the 2H or N (Neutral) positions.

When operating your vehicle in 4L, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2H or 4H positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4-wheel-drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference will adversely affect shifting and can cause damage to the transfer case.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer and therefore the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4-wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Delayed shifts out of four-wheel drive may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low or uneven tire pressures, excessive vehicle loading, or cold temperatures.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2H
Rear Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry hard surfaced roads.

4H
4-Wheel-Drive High Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

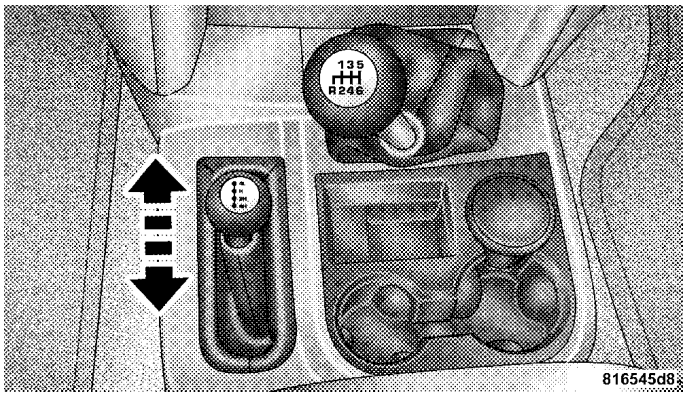
N
Neutral - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4L

4-Wheel-Drive Low Range - Low speed 4-wheel-drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h). **Vehicle's equipped with the AISIN (AS68RC) Automatic Transmission, Overdrive gear (5th and 6th) will be disabled when the transfer case is in 4L.**

Shifting Procedure — Manually Shifted Transfer Case



Manual Transfer Case Shifter

2H ⇔ 4H

Shifting between 2H and 4H can be made with the vehicle stopped or in motion. If the vehicle is in motion, shifts can be made up to 55 mph (88 km/h). With the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage / disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after completing the shift. Apply a constant force when shifting the transfer case lever.

2H or 4H ⇔ 4L

With the vehicle rolling at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift an automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or depress the clutch on a manual transmission. While the vehicle is coasting at 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h), shift the transfer case lever firmly to the desired position. Do not pause in transfer case N (Neutral).

NOTE: Pausing in transfer case N (Neutral) in vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission may require shutting the engine OFF to avoid gear clash while completing the shift. If difficulty occurs, shift automatic transmission to N (Neutral), hold foot on brake, and turn engine OFF. Make shift to the desired mode.

NOTE: Shifting into or out of 4L is possible with the vehicle completely stopped, however difficulty may occur due to the mating clutch teeth not being properly aligned. Several attempts may be required for clutch teeth alignment and shift completion to occur. The preferred method is with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h). Avoid attempting to engage or disengage 4L with the vehicle moving faster than 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

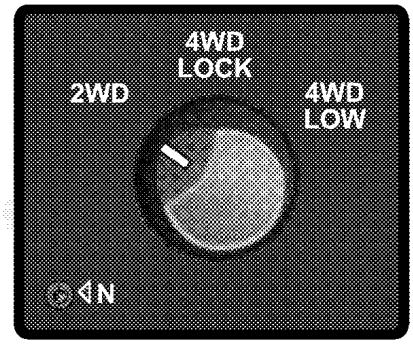
NOTE: Do not attempt to shift to or from 4L while the transmission is in gear or clutch is engaged.

Transfer Case Reminder Light

The four-wheel-drive operating light (4WD), located in the instrument cluster, is used to alert the driver that the front axle is fully engaged and all four wheels are driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions (4 Position Switch) — If Equipped



Transfer Case Switch

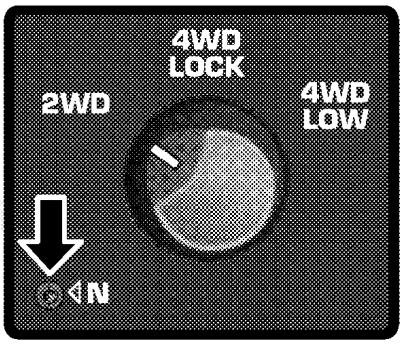
This is an electric shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.

This Electronically Shifted transfer case provides 4 mode positions: 2 (rear) wheel drive high range, 4 wheel drive lock range, 4 wheel drive low range, and neutral.

The Electronically Shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the 2 wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions (dry hard surfaced roads).

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position - see Shifting Procedure section for specific shifting instructions. The 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4WD LOCK and 4WD LOW positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



81977fda

NOTE: The transfer case Neutral (N) position is selected by depressing the recessed button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. The transfer case Neutral (N) position is to be used for recreational towing only. See the Recreational Towing section for specific procedures on shifting into and out of Neutral (N).

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case Only

Transfer case position indicator lights are located in the instrument cluster and indicate the current and desired transfer case selection. When you select a different transfer case position, the indicator lights will do the following:

If All Shift Conditions are Met

1. The current position indicator light will turn OFF.
2. The selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift.
3. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If One or More Shift Conditions are not Met

1. The indicator light for the current position will remain ON.

2. The newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash.

3. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five (5) seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section of the owner's manual.

The "SERVICE 4WD" warning light monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the ″Service 4WD″ light is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning, as this can cause damage to driveline components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When operating your vehicle in 4WD LOW, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4WD LOCK positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4 wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4 wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2WD

Rear Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry hard surfaced roads.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4WD LOCK

4 Wheel Drive Lock Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

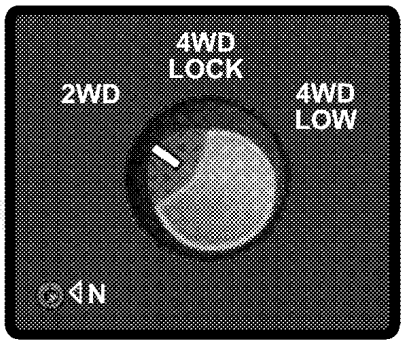
4WD LOW

4 Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4 wheel drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

N

Neutral - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Shifting Procedure — Electronically Shifted Transfer Case



81a4283e

Transfer Case Switch

NOTE: If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift.The indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five (5) seconds and try the shift again.

NOTE: If all the requirements to select a new transfer case position have been met, the current position indicator light will turn OFF, the selected position indicator light will flash until the transfer case completes the shift. When the shift is complete, the indicator light for the selected position will stop flashing and remain ON.

2WD⇔ 4WD LOCK

Rotate the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4WD LOCK can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage / disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition key must be in the ON position with the engine either RUNNING or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the key is in the accessory position.

NOTE: The 4x4 system will not allow shifts between 2WD/4WD LOCK if the front and/or rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift.

2WD or 4WD LOCK⇔ 4WD LOW

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4WD LOW some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h) or completely stopped. USE EITHER OF THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Preferred Procedure

1. With engine RUNNING, slow vehicle to 2 to 3 mph (3 to 5 km/h).

2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.

2. With the key ON and the engine either OFF or RUNNING, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

NOTE: If steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: If your are leaving your vehicle stored for longer than 21 days, refer to the section on “Vehicle Storage.”

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIMITED-SLIP DIFFERENTIAL — IF EQUIPPED

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel, particularly when there is a difference between the traction characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit performs similarly to a conventional differential. On slippery surfaces, however, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the rear wheel having the better traction.

The limited-slip differential is especially helpful during slippery driving conditions. With both rear wheels on a slippery surface, a slight application of the accelerator will supply maximum traction. When starting with only one rear wheel on an excessively slippery surface, slight momentary application of the parking brake may be necessary to gain maximum traction.

WARNING!

On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential, never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground, since the vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground. You could lose control of the vehicle.

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

POWER TAKE OFF OPERATION – IF EQUIPPED

The Dodge Chassis Cab vehicle, when equipped with either the automatic 6 speed or manual G-56 6 speed transmissions, will allow for an aftermarket upfit with a transmission driven PTO (power take off). The customer will have the ability to operate the PTO in either a "stationary" or "mobile" mode. The vehicles will be factory set to the "stationary" mode. In order to select the "mobile" mode a DaimlerChrysler Dealership is required to modify the vehicles settings using their proprietary Dealer service tool.

Stationary Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Be in "park" position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission)
- Upfitter provider (on / off) switch has been activated
- Parking brake applied (vehicles equipped with manual transmission)
- Vehicle must be running
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits

The customer has the choice to operate the PTO by utilizing the cruise control switches or by utilizing a remote control (provided by the PTO supplier). To operate the feature using the cruise control switches the customer must first activate the up fitter provided on / off switch. Next, the cruise control "on" switch is selected. Following this step the "set" switch must be depressed. The vehicle is now in the PTO mode and is ready for use. In order to increase or decrease the engine idle speed, to optimize the PTO function, the "accel" and "decel" cruise switches can be used respectively. To disengage PTO

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

operation and return to “standard vehicle operation” simply turn the up fitter provided on / off switch to the off position or press the “cancel” cruise switch.

To operate the PTO via a remote switch the customer must make sure the above conditions are met. It is vital for proper operation that the PTO and remote have been installed correctly paying special attention to ensure the vehicle provided wiring has been connected properly. This is the responsibility of the installer of the PTO and switches / remote system. It is the responsibility of the PTO manufacturer to ensure that their electrical (switches and remote) system is compatible with the vehicle’s electrical architecture and software functionality.

Mobile Mode

To operate the PTO in this mode the vehicle must meet the following conditions:

- Dealer selected “mobile” mode activated via Dealer proprietary service tool
- Upfitter provider (on / off) switch has been activated
- Vehicle must be in “park” or “drive” position (vehicles equipped with automatic transmission)
- Parking brake must not be applied
- No vehicle, brake or clutch switch faults present
- Vehicle must be running
- PTO must be correctly installed using the vehicle provided circuits

The customer may choose to use the PTO while the vehicle is moving. To do so the PTO function must be activated prior to taking the vehicle out of “park”. This is accomplished by activating the up fitter provided PTO on / off switch. At this point the customer may place the vehicle in a forward or reverse gear and have PTO

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

operation. To disengage PTO operation and return to "standard vehicle operation" simply turn the up fitter provided on/off switch to the off position.

NOTE: For application specific information with respect to PTO and pump requirements and additional vehicle information (wiring schematics, preset idle values, engine speed limits, and vehicle hardware and software requirements) please refer to the Dodge Body Builders Guide by accessing **"www.dodge.com/bodybuilder"** and choosing the appropriate links.

Power Take Off – Aftermarket Installation

If you did not order the PTO (Power Take Off) Prep Package from the factory and want to convert your vehicle, refer to the Body Builders Guide at www.dodge.com/bodybuilder or contact the manufacturer directly at dodgebbg@dcx.com (e-mail), 866–205–4102 (toll free) or 313–493–2020.

DRIVING ON SLIPPERY SURFACES

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

1. Slow down during rainstorms or when roads are slushy.
2. Slow down if road has standing water or puddles.
3. Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
4. Keep tires properly inflated.
5. Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the car in front to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Do not use trailer tow mode on vehicle's with the AISIN 6 speed automatic transmission (6.7L Diesel Engine only).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

Driving through water more than a few inches deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

Flowing/Rising Water

WARNING!

Do not drive on or cross a road or a path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following before doing so:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

- **Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.**
- **Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.**
- **Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.**
- **Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drivetrain components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e. engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e. fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the new vehicle limited warranty.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lockup and stall out and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the new vehicle limited warranty.**

WARNING!

- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.**
- **Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.**
- **Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lockup and stall out and leave you stranded.**
- **Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DRIVING OFF-ROAD

Care should be taken when attempting to climb steep hills or driving diagonally across a hill or slope. If natural obstacles force you to travel diagonally up or down a hill, choose a mild angle and keep as little side tilt as possible. Keep the vehicle moving and make turns slowly and cautiously.

If you must back down a hill, back straight down using REVERSE gear. Never back down in NEUTRAL, or diagonally across the hill.

When driving over sand, mud, and other soft terrain, shift to low gear and drive steadily. Apply the accelerator slowly to avoid spinning the wheels.

DO NOT REDUCE the tire pressures for this type of driving.

NOTE: After off-road usage, particularly in sand or mud, inspect the underside of the vehicle for accumulated dirt at the propeller shaft, axles, U-joints, brake rotors and calipers.

Use a hose to clean off any accumulation of dirt or mud.

Check the exhaust system and all exposed components for any sign of damage.

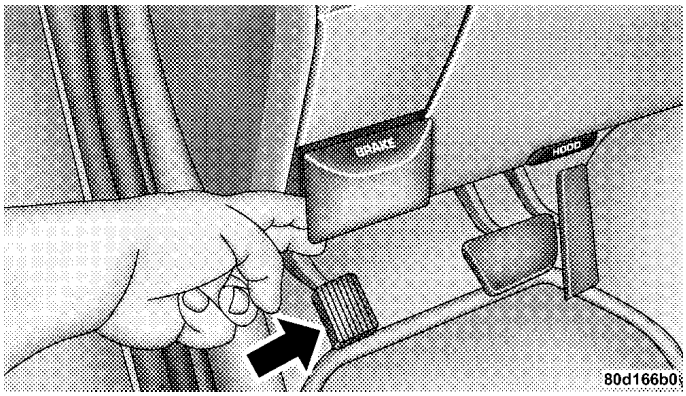
If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted foreign material can cause a wheel imbalance. Removing the foreign material from the wheels will correct the situation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PARKING BRAKE

The foot operated parking brake is positioned below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.

NOTE: The instrument cluster red brake warning light will come on and flash to indicate that the parking brake is applied. You must be sure that the parking brake is fully applied before leaving the vehicle.



Parking Brake Release

Be sure the parking brake is firmly set when parked and the gear shift lever is in the PARK position. When parking on a hill you should apply the parking brake before placing the gear shift lever in PARK, otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the selector out of PARK.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or it may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave an automatic transmission in Park, a manual transmission in Reverse or First gear. Failure to do so may allow the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.**
- **Never leave children alone in a vehicle. Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Don't leave the keys in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**
- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving, failure to do so can lead to brake problems due to excessive heating of the rear brakes.**

When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

The parking brake should always be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

BRAKE SYSTEM

If power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. However, you will experience a substantial increase in braking effort to stop the vehicle.

If either the front or rear hydraulic systems lose normal capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of overall braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the BRAKE warning lamp and the ABS lamp (if equipped) during brake use.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake Noise

During normal operation of the brake system certain noises may be present from time to time. Occasional ″groan″ or ″squeal″ noises may occur during normal operation of the brake system which may not be indicative of a problem. These noises may be heard at any time the brakes are applied but may be more noticeable during the first few brake applications in the morning. Moisture, hot or cold temperature, dust, and or other debris may also contribute to the noise condition. Repeated or continuous noises during braking may be an indication that the brake linings are worn and in need of replacement.

Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System

WARNING!

Anti-Lock Brake Systems contain sophisticated electronic equipment. It may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be performed by qualified professionals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **Anti-lock system (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

This Anti-lock Brake System is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lockup and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

The system's pump motor runs during an ABS stop to provide regulated hydraulic pressure. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation. This is normal.

When you are in a severe braking condition involving use of the Anti-lock Brake System, you will experience some pedal drop as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. This is the result of the system reverting to the base brake system and is normal.

Engagement of the Anti-lock Brake System may be accompanied by a pulsing sensation. You may also hear a clicking noise. These occurrences are normal, and indicate that the system is functioning.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ABS Warning Light

The Anti-lock Brake System includes an amber warning light, located in the instrument cluster. When the light is illuminated, the Anti-lock Brake System is not functioning. The system reverts to standard non-anti-lock brakes.

WARNING!

Pumping of the anti-lock brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to an accident. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.

POWER STEERING

The standard power steering system will give you good vehicle response and increased ease of maneuverability in tight spaces. The system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for some reason, the power assist is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions you will observe a substantial increase in steering effort, especially at very low vehicle speeds and during parking maneuvers.

NOTE: Increased noise levels at the end of the steering wheel travel are considered normal and does not indicate that there is a problem with the power steering system.

Upon initial start-up in cold weather, the power steering pump may make noise for a short period of time. This is due to the cold, thick fluid in the steering system. This noise should be considered normal, and does not in any way damage the steering system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

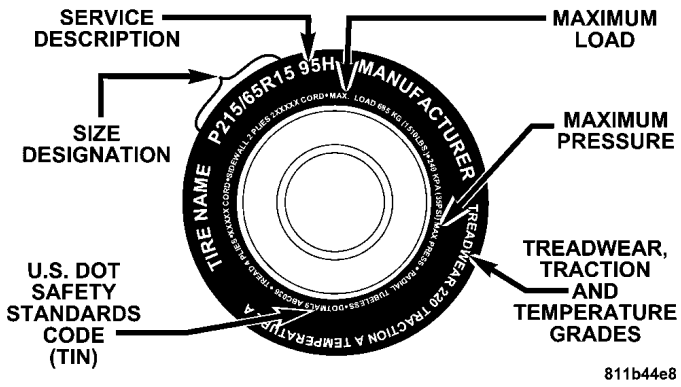
Continued operation with reduced power steering assist could pose a safety risk to yourself and others. Service should be obtained as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged operation of the steering system at the end of the steering wheel travel will increase the steering fluid temperature and should be avoided when possible. Damage to the power steering pump may occur.

TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

Tire Markings



5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE:

- P (Passenger)-Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.
- European Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter ″P″ is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H
- LT (Light Truck)-Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters "LT" that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary Spare tires are high-pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only. Tires designed to this standard have the letter "T" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High Flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Sizing Chart

EXAMPLE:
Size Designation: **P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards **″....blank....″** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards **LT** = Light Truck tire based on U.S. design standards **T** = Temporary Spare tire **31** = Overall Diameter in Inches (in)
215 = Section Width in Millimeters (mm)
65 = Aspect Ratio in Percent (%) —Ratio of section height to section width of tire. **10.5** = Section Width in Inches (in)
R = Construction Code —″R″ means Radial Construction. —″D″ means Diagonal or Bias Construction.
15 = Rim Diameter in Inches (in)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXAMPLE:
Service Description:
95 = Load Index —A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry.
H = Speed Symbol —A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions. —The maximum speed corresponding to the Speed Symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e. tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits).
Load Identification:
"....blank...." = Absence of any text on sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) Tire
Extra Load (XL) = Extra Load (or Reinforced) Tire
Light Load = Light Load Tire
C,D,E = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure
Maximum Load — Maximum Load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry.
Maximum Pressure — Maximum Pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN including date code located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

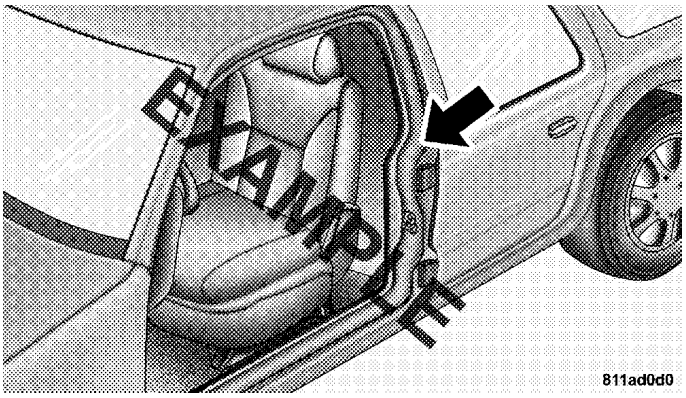
EXAMPLE:
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation —This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards, and is approved for highway use.
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location. (2 digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size. (2 digits)
ABCD = Code used by tire manufacturer. (1 to 4 digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured. (2 digits) —03 means the 3rd week.
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured. (2 digits) —01 means the year 2001. —Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have 1 number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Loading and Tire Pressure

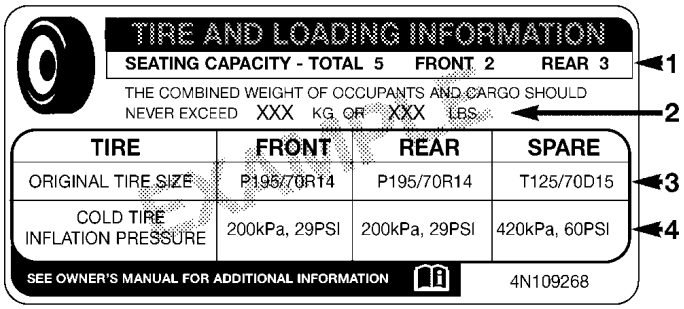
Tire Placard Location

NOTE: The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on either the face of the driver's door or the driver's side "B" pillar.



Tire Placard Location

Tire and Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

Tire and Loading Information

This placard tells you important information about the:

1) number of people that can be carried in the vehicle
2) the total weight your vehicle can carry
3) the tire size designed for your vehicle
4) the cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the "Tire and Loading Information" placard and in the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

NOTE: Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWR's) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWR's, vehicle loading, and trailer towing, refer to the "Vehicle Loading" section of this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds" on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (since 5 x 150 = 750, and 1400 – 750 = 650 lbs.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

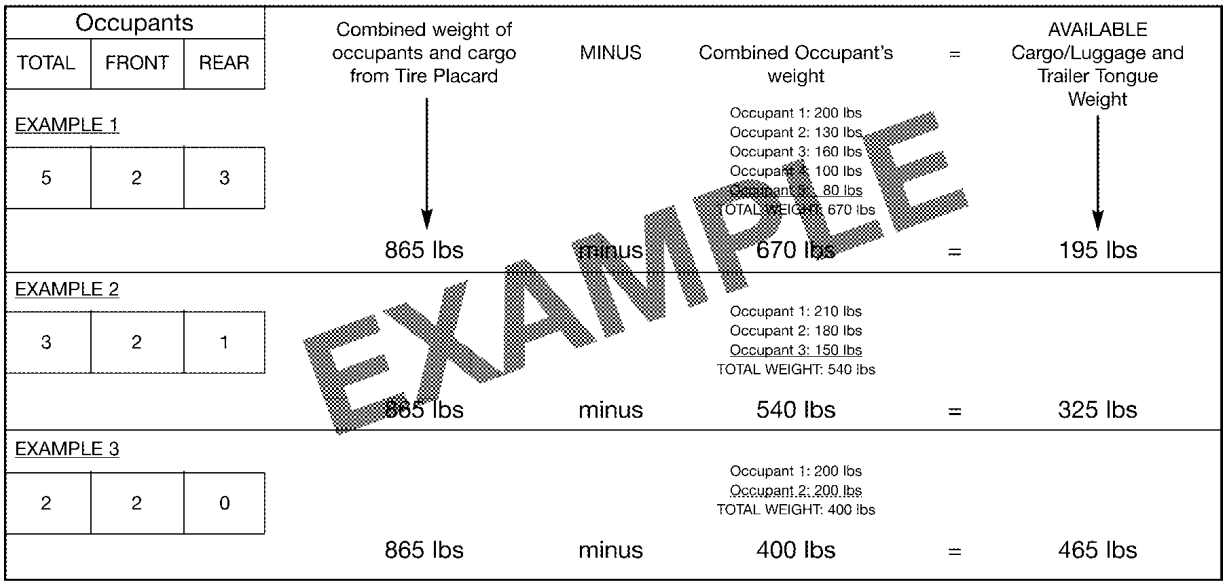
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs. (392 kg).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

TIRES — GENERAL INFORMATION

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Three primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

1. Safety—

WARNING!

• Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause accidents.

• Under inflation increases tire flexing and can result in tire failure.

• Over inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.

• Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.

• Over inflated or under inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

• Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

• Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

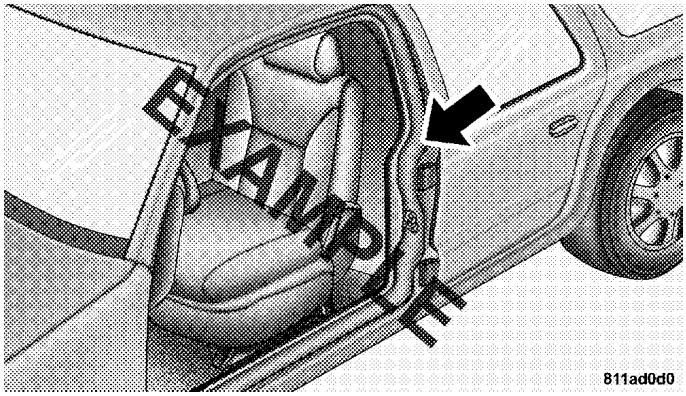
2. Economy—
Improper inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life resulting in a need for earlier tire replacement. Under inflation, also increases tire rolling resistance and results in higher fuel consumption.

3. Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability—
Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed either on the face of the driver's door or on the driver's side "B" pillar.

Some vehicles may have Supplemental Tire Pressure Information for vehicle loads that are less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition. These pressure conditions will be found in the "Supplemental Tire Pressure Information" section of this manual.



Tire Placard Location

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The pressure should be checked and adjusted as well as inspecting for signs of tire wear or visible damage at least once a month. Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under inflated.

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap (if equipped). This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure." Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1 km) after a 3 hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12 °F (7 °C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68 °F (20 °C) and the outside temperature = 32 °F (0 °C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12 °F (7 °C) for this outside temperature condition.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

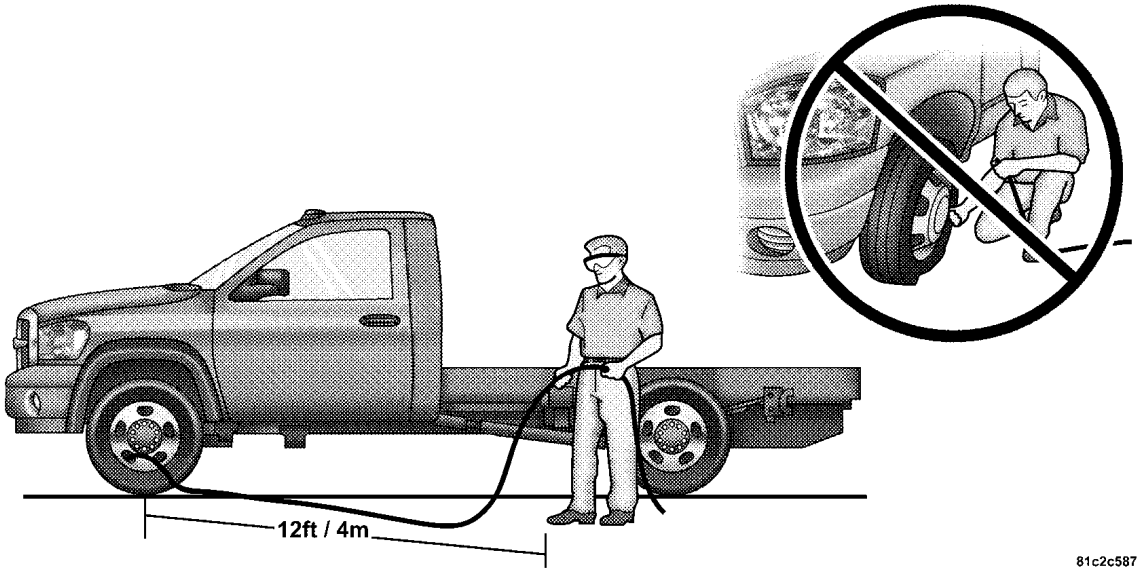
Tire Inflation Pressure — 4500/5500 with Steel Carcass Ply Tires

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewall. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Adjusting tire pressure must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped accordingly.

Inflation Pressure Adjustment When Mounted to Vehicle

During procedures when adding tire inflation pressure, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation devise, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area. See figure below.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4500/5500 Tire Inflation

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When adjusting inflation pressure to a tire and wheel assembly mounted on a vehicle, use Remote Mount Automatic Inflation Kit (similar to model number 27-cc1021234, available from TEAM PSE – PENTASTAR Service Equipment Phone Number 1-800-734-4334.

NOTE: Never attempt to re-inflate a tire and wheel assembly which has been run flat or extremely under inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection.

Personnel trained, supervised, and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).

Inflation Pressure Adjustment When Not Mounted to Vehicle

When adjusting inflation pressure to a tire and wheel assembly not mounted on a vehicle, use a Remote Mount Automatic Inflation Kit and a Tire Inflation Cage similar to model number #174-2240 available from TEAM PSE (PENTASTAR Service Equipment – 1-800-223-5623).

Tire Pressures for High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious accident. Don't drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Radial-Ply Tires

WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause an accident. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four (or 6, in case of trucks with dual rear wheels). Never combine them with other types of tires.

Cuts and punctures in radial tires are repairable only in the tread area because of sidewall flexing. Consult your authorized tire dealer for radial tire repairs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limited Use Spare — If Equipped

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use on your vehicle. This tire is identified by a limited use spare tire warning label located on the limited use spare tire and wheel assembly. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same tire, replace (or repair) the original tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

The limited use spare tires are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than 60 mph (100 km/h). Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressure listed on either your tire placard or limited use spare tire and wheel assembly. Replace (or repair) the original tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

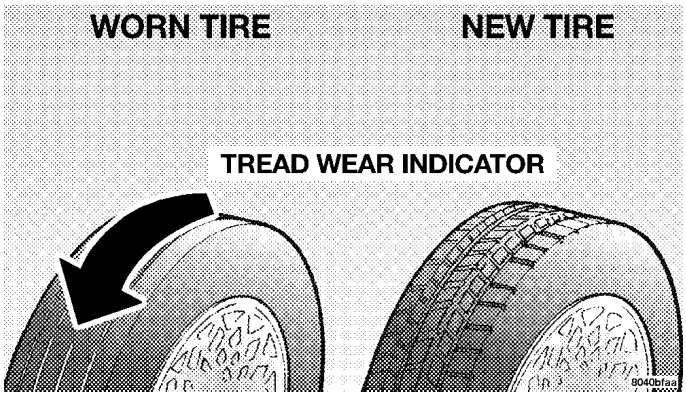
Refer to “Freeing A Stuck Vehicle” in Section 6 of this manual for additional information.

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle’s wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and don’t let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes 1/16 inch (2 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced.

Many states have laws requiring tire replacement at this point.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Life of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including but not limited to:

- Driving style
- Tire pressure
- Distance driven

WARNING!

Tires and spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Keep dismounted tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressure. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed (refer to the paragraph on "Tread Wear Indicators"). Refer to the "Tire and Loading Information" placard for the size designation of your tire. The service description and load identification will be found on the original equipment tire. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle. We recommend that you contact your original equipment or an authorized tire dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.**
- **Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have an accident.**
- **Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

Alignment And Balance

Poor suspension alignment may result in:

- Fast tire wear.
- Uneven tire wear, such as feathering and one-sided wear.
- Vehicle pull to right or left.

Tires may also cause the vehicle to pull to the left or right. Alignment will not correct this condition. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Improper alignment will not cause vehicle vibration. Vibration may be a result of tire and wheel out-of-balance. Proper balancing will reduce vibration and avoid tire cupping and spotty wear.

SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION — IF EQUIPPED

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers {150 lbs (68 kg) each} plus 200 lbs (91kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on the face of the driver's door.

TIRE CHAINS

Use "Class U" chains on Ram Trucks, or other traction aids that meet SAE Type "U" specifications.

NOTE: Chains must be the proper size for the vehicle, as recommended by the chain manufacturer.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle, tires or chains, observe the following precautions:

- **Because of limited chain clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only chains in good condition are used. Broken chains can cause serious vehicle damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could suggest chain breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the chain before further use.**
- **Install chains as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about 1/2 mile (0.8 km).**
- **Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h).**
- **Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.**
- **Do not install tire chains on front wheels of 4x2 vehicles.**
- **Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.**
- **Observe the tire chain manufacturer's instructions on method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for usage. Always use the lower suggested operating speed of the chain manufacturer if different than the speed recommended by the manufacturer.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These cautions apply to all chain traction devices, including link and cable (radial) chains.

Tire chain use is permitted only on the rear tires of Ram 4X2 trucks.

NOTE: The use of class "U" chains is permitted on the front and rear of 4X4, Ram Trucks with Dual Rear Wheels and LT235/80R17E tires.

NOTE: On 4X2 Ram Trucks, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only of vehicles equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17, and LT235/80R17 size tires.

NOTE: On 4X4 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) Ram Trucks, class "U" snow chains are permitted on the rear wheels only of vehicles equipped with LT265/70R17.

CAUTION!

Do not use tire chains on the 4X2 front wheels of SRW (Single Rear Wheels) equipped with LT245/70R17, LT265/70R17 tires or 4X4 front tires of Ram Trucks equipped with LT265/70R17tires. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle.

SNOW TIRES

Snow tires should be of the same size and type construction as the front tires. Consult the manufacturer of the snow tire to determine any maximum vehicle speed requirement associated with the tire. These tires should always be operated at the vehicle maximum capacity inflation pressures under any load condition.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be

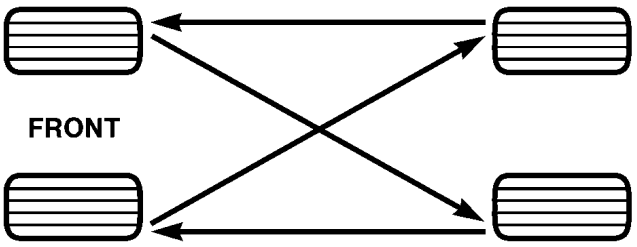
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates, and develop irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on On/Off Road type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow, and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.

Follow the recommended tire rotation frequency for your type of driving found in the "Maintenance Schedules" Section of this manual. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

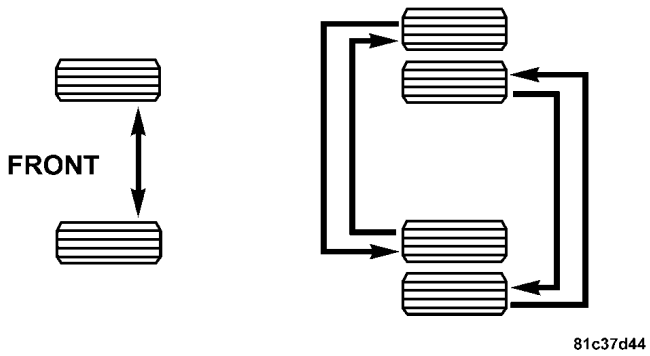


8031e864

NOTE: On Canadian vehicles only, if your Ram truck is equipped with All-Season type tires on the front and ON/OFF Road type tires mounted on the rear, do not use a front to back rotation pattern. Instead, rotate your tires side to side at the recommended intervals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Rear Wheels



The tires used on dual wheel assemblies should be matched for wear to prevent overloading one tire in a set. To check if tires are even, lay a straight edge across all four tires. The straight edge should touch all the tires.

CAUTION!

3500/4500/5500 Dual Rear Tires have only one approved direction of rotation. This is to accommodate the asymmetrical design (tread pattern) of the ON/OFF road tire and the use of Outline White Letter (OWL) tires.

- **When replacing a flat, the spare tire may have to be remounted on the rim or installed at a different location to maintain the correct placement of the tire on the wheel relative to the tire/wheel position on the truck. For example, if the spare is used to replace an outer rear tire it will have to be remounted on the rim so that the wheel is dished inward. That way the tread design of asymmetrical tires and the white writing of the OWL tires will maintain proper position.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE RUNAWAY

WARNING!

In case of engine runaway due to flammable fumes from gasoline spills or turbocharger oil leaks being sucked into the engine do the following to help avoid personal injury and/or vehicle damage:

1. Shut off engine ignition switch.

2. Using a CO_2 or dry chemical type fire extinguisher, direct the spray from the fire extinguisher into the grille on the passenger side so that the spray enters the engine air intake.

The inlet for the engine air intake is located behind the passenger side headlamp and receives air through the grille

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Fuel Requirements (5.7L Gas Engines)

The 5.7L engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having an octane range of 87 to 89. The manufacturer recommends the use of 89 octane for optimum performance. The routine use of premium gasoline is not recommended. The use of premium gasoline will provide no benefit over high quality regular and mid-grade gasolines, and in some circumstances may result in poorer performance.

Light spark knock at low engine speeds is not harmful to your engine. However, continued heavy spark knock at high speeds can cause damage and immediate service is required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of “regular” gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Over 40 auto manufacturers world-wide have issued and endorsed consistent gasoline specifications (the Worldwide Fuel Charter, WWFC) to define fuel properties necessary to deliver enhanced emissions, performance and durability for your vehicle. We recommend the use of gasolines that meet the WWFC specifications if they are available.

Reformulated Gasoline

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as “Reformulated Gasoline.” Reformulated gasolines contain oxygenates, and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

We strongly support the use of reformulated gasolines. Properly blended reformulated gasolines will provide excellent performance and durability for the engine and fuel system components.

Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as 10% ethanol, MTBE and ETBE. Oxygenates are required in some areas of the country during the winter months to reduce carbon monoxide emissions. Fuels blended with these oxygenates may be used in your vehicle.

CAUTION!

DO NOT use gasolines containing Methanol or E85 Ethanol. Use of these blends may result in starting and driveability problems and may damage critical fuel system components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Problems that result from using methanol/gasoline or E85 Ethanol blends are not the responsibility of the manufacturer. While MTBE is an oxygenate made from Methanol, it does not have the negative effects of Methanol.

MMT In Gasoline

MMT is a manganese-containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasolines blended with MMT provide no performance advantage beyond gasolines of the same octane number without MMT. Gasolines blended with MMT reduce spark plug life and reduce emission system performance. We recommend that gasolines free of MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump; therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether or not his/her gasoline contains MMT.

It is even more important to look for gasolines without MMT in Canada because MMT can be used at levels higher than allowed in the United States. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasolines.

Materials Added To Fuel

All gasolines sold in the United States are required to contain effective detergent additives. Use of additional detergents or other additives is not needed under normal conditions and would result in unnecessary cost. Therefore, you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

Fuel System Cautions

CAUTION!
Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The use of leaded gas is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance, damage the emission control system.
- An out-of-tune engine, or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions, can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your dealer for service assistance.
- When pulling a heavy load or driving a fully loaded vehicle when the humidity is low and the temperature is high, use a premium unleaded fuel to help prevent spark knock. If spark knock persists, lighten the load, or engine piston damage may result.
- The use of fuel additives which are now being sold as octane enhancers is not recommended. Many of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Carbon Monoxide Warnings

WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.

- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.
- Keep the liftgate closed when driving your vehicle to prevent carbon monoxide and other poisonous exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

Fuel Requirements (6.7L Diesel Engines)

Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system. For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance. If the vehicle is exposed to extreme cold (below 20°F or -7°C), or is required to operate at colder-than-normal conditions for prolonged periods, use climatized No. 2 diesel fuel or dilute the No. 2 diesel fuel with 50% No. 1 diesel fuel. This will provide better protection from fuel gelling or wax-plugging of the fuel filters.

WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Diesel fuel is seldom completely free of water. To prevent fuel system trouble, drain the accumulated water from the **fuel/water separator using the fuel/water separator** drain provided. If you buy good quality fuel and follow the cold weather advice above, fuel conditioners should not be required in your vehicle. If available in your area, a high cetane "premium" diesel fuel may offer improved cold-starting and warm-up performance.

Fuel Specifications

The Cummins Turbocharged, Charge Air Cooled, Diesel engine has been developed to take advantage of the high energy content and generally lower cost No. 2 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel or No. 2 Ultra Low Sulfur climatized diesel fuels. Experience has shown that it also operates on No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuels or other fuels within specification.

NOTE: A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-6751 may be used with your Cummins Diesel equipped vehicle.

NOTE: In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins Diesel equipped vehicle.

NOTE: No. 1 Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel should only be used where extended arctic conditions (-10°F or -23°C) exist.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADDING FUEL

Adding Fuel (Gas Engines)

CAUTION!

Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also a poorly fitted after-market cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate, due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.

CAUTION!

A poorly fitting gas cap may cause the Malfunction Indicator Light to turn on.

CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

NOTE: When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.

WARNING!

- **Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank filled.**
- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and will cause the Malfunction Indicator Light to turn on.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Tighten the gas cap 1/4 turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on, Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

If the vehicles diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap in loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a GASCAP message will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the gas cap until a “clicking” sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). Resolving the problem will turn the MIL light off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Fuel (Diesel Engines)

CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

NOTE:

- When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the gas cap until you hear a "clicking" sound. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened.
- Make sure that the gas cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.

WARNING!

A fire may result if fuel is pumped into a portable container that is on a truck bed. You could be burned. Always place fuel containers on the ground while filling.

Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap)

If the gas cap is lost or damaged, be sure the replacement cap is for use with this vehicle.

CAUTION!

Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank filled.**
- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running.**

Avoid Using Contaminated Fuel

Fuel that is contaminated by water or dirt can cause severe damage to the engine fuel system. Proper maintenance of the engine fuel filter and fuel tank is essential. (See Section 7 for Maintenance Procedures).

NOTE: Climatized Ultra Low Sulfur diesel fuel is a blend of Number 2 Ultra Low Sulfur and Number 1 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel fuel which reduces the temperature at which wax crystals form in the fuel.

Bulk Fuel Storage

If you store quantities of fuel, good maintenance of the stored fuel is also essential. Fuel contaminated with water will promote the growth of "microbes." These microbes form "slime" that will clog fuel filters and lines. Drain condensation from the supply tank and change the line filter on a regular basis.

NOTE: When a diesel engine is allowed to run out of fuel, air is pulled into the fuel system.

You may try priming as described below. However, if the engine will not start, refer to the fuel priming procedure in the Service Manual or have the vehicle towed to an authorized Dodge dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

Priming if the engine has run out of fuel

1. Add a substantial quantity of fuel to the tank 5 to 10 gallons (19 to 38L).

2. Crank the engine for 1 to 2 seconds. If the engine does not start, then release the key or starter button back to the RUN position (do not turn the key back to the OFF position). The electric fuel transfer pump will continue to run and purge air from the system for about 20 seconds. After 20 seconds, attempt to start the engine again.

3. Start the engine using the Normal Starting Procedure.

4. Repeat the procedure if the engine does not start.

CAUTION!

Do not engage the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow two minutes between the cranking intervals.

NOTE: The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.

VEHICLE LOADING

Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door or pillar.

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and indicates the Month, Day and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)
The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems (GAWR). Total load must be limited so GVWR and front and rear GAWR are not exceeded.

Payload
The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry, including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options and cargo.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the components in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires or wheels). Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability does not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

Tire Size
The tire size on the Label represents the actual tire size on your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

Rim Size
This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inflation Pressure
This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

Curb Weight
The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

Loading
The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation. The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met. Store the heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distributions can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

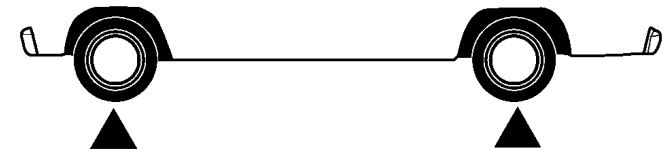
CAUTION!

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

An EXAMPLE of a loaded vehicle is shown in the following chart. Note that neither GVWR nor GAWR capabilities are exceeded. Overloading can cause potential safety hazards and shorten service life.

NOTE: The weights shown in this chart are not necessarily the weights for your vehicle. Also, the amount of load added to both the front and rear axles can be computed after the vehicle has been weighed both in its ″curb weight″ condition, and in its ″loaded and ready for operation″ condition.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 6500 LBS.



FRONT CURB	— 2153	REAR CURB	— 1458
FRONT LOAD	— 423	REAR LOAD	— 1466
FRONT WEIGHT (LOADED)	2576	REAR WEIGHT (LOADED)	2924
GAWR (FRONT)	— 3600	GAWR (REAR)	— 3900

TOTAL LOADED WEIGHT 5500 LBS.

8120c425

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRAILER TOWING

In this section you will find safety tips and information on limits to the type of towing you can reasonably do with your vehicle. Before towing a trailer carefully review this information to tow your load as efficiently and safely as possible.

To maintain warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

Common Towing Definitions

The following trailer towing related definitions will assist you in understanding the following information:

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The GVWR is the total allowable weight of your vehicle. This includes driver, passengers, cargo and tongue weight. The total load must be limited so that you do not exceed the GVWR.

Gross Trailer Weight (GTW)

The gross trailer weight (GTW) is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its ″loaded and ready for operation″ condition. The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR)

The gross combination weight rating (GCWR) is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination. (Note that GCWR ratings include a 68 kg (150 lbs) allowance for the presence of a driver).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The GAWR is the maximum capacity of the front and rear axles. Distribute the load over the front and rear axles evenly. Make sure that you do not exceed either front or rear GAWR.

WARNING!

It is important that you do not exceed the maximum front or rear GAWR. A dangerous driving condition can result if either rating is exceeded. You could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident.

Tongue Weight (TW)

The downward force exerted on the hitch ball by the trailer. In most cases it should not be less than 10% or more than 15% of the trailer load. You must consider this as part of the load on your vehicle.

Frontal Area

The maximum height and maximum width of the front of a trailer.

Trailer Sway Control

The trailer sway control is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

Weight-Carrying Hitch

A weight-carrying hitch supports the trailer tongue weight, just as if it were luggage located at a hitch ball or some other connecting point of the truck. These kind of hitches are the most popular on the market today and they're commonly used to tow small- and medium-sized trailers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight-Distributing Hitch

A weight-distributing system works by applying leverage through spring (load) bars. They are typically used for heavier loads, to distribute trailer tongue weight to the tow vehicle's front axle and the trailer axle(s). When used in accordance with the manufacturers' directions, it provides for a more level ride, offering more consistent steering and brake control thereby enhancing towing safety. The addition of a friction / hydraulic sway control also dampens sway caused by traffic and crosswinds and contributes positively to tow vehicle and trailer stability. Trailer sway control and a weight distributing (load equalizing) hitch are recommended for heavier Tongue Weights (TW) and may be required depending on Vehicle and Trailer configuration / loading to comply with gross axle weight rating (GAWR) requirements.

WARNING!

An improperly adjusted Weight Distributing Hitch system may reduce handling, stability, braking performance, and could result in an accident.

Weight Distributing Systems may not be compatible with Surge Brake Couplers. Consult with your hitch and trailer manufacturer or a reputable Recreational Vehicle dealer for additional information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EXAMPLE ONLY

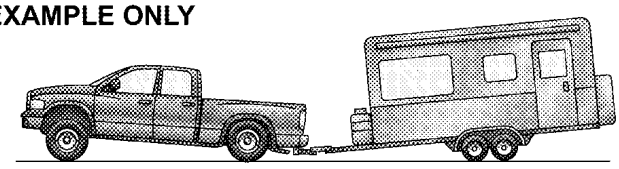


FIG. 1 WITHOUT WEIGHT DISTRIBUTION (INCORRECT)

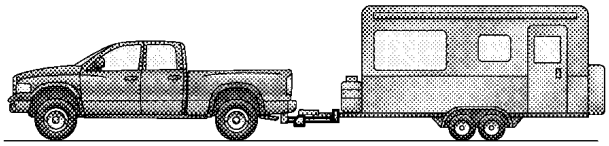


FIG 2. WITH WEIGHT DISTRIBUTION (CORRECT)

8181f965

Weight Distributing Hitch System

EXAMPLE ONLY

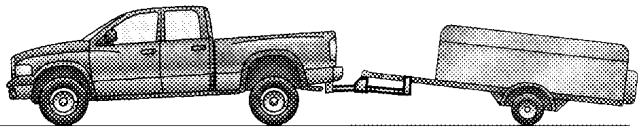


FIG. 3 IMPROPER ADJUSTMENT (INCORRECT)

8181f96f

Improper Adjustment of Weight Distributing System

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fifth-Wheel Hitch

A special high platform with a coupling that mounts over the rear axle of the tow vehicle in the truck bed. Connects a vehicle and fifth-wheel trailer with a coupling king pin.

Gooseneck Hitch

The gooseneck hitch employs a pivoted coupling arm which attaches to a ball mounted in the bed of a pickup truck. The coupling arm connects to the hitch mounted over the rear axle in the truck bed.

Trailer Hitch Classification

The rear bumper is intended to tow trailers up to 2,000 lbs (907 kg) without added equipment or alterations to the standard equipment. Your vehicle may be factory equipped for safe towing of trailers weighing over 2,000 lbs (907 kg) with the optional Trailer Tow Prep Package. See your dealer for package content.

The following chart provides the industry standard for the maximum trailer weight a given trailer hitch class can tow and should be used to assist you in selecting the correct trailer hitch for your intended towing condition. Refer to "Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)" for the website address that contains the necessary information for your specific drivetrain.

Trailer Hitch Classification	
Class	**Max. GTW (Gross Trailer Wt.)**
Class I - Light Duty	2,000 lbs (907 kg)
Class II - Medium Duty	3,500 lbs (1587 kg)
Class III - Heavy Duty	5,000 lbs (2268 kg)
Class IV - Extra Heavy Duty	10,000 lbs (4540 kg)
Fifth Wheel/ Gooseneck	Greater than 10,000 lbs (4540 kg)

All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

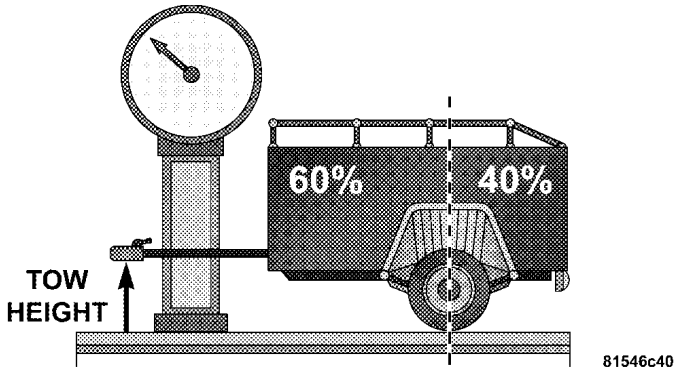
NOTE: For additional trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- **http:// www.dodge.com/towing**.
- **http:// www.dodge.ca** (Canada).

Trailer and Tongue Weight

Always load a trailer with 60% to 65% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% to 15% of the Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) on the tow hitch of your vehicle. Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side to side which will cause loss of control of vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of many trailer accidents.

Never exceed the maximum tongue weight stamped on your bumper or trailer hitch.



Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle of the vehicle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.
- The weight of the driver and all passengers.

NOTE: Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options, or dealer-installed options, must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard in the Tire Safety Information Section of this manual.

Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components the following guidelines are recommended:

CAUTION!

- **Avoid towing a trailer for the first 500 miles (805 km) of vehicle operation. Doing so may damage your vehicle.**
- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) of trailer towing, limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h).**

Perform the maintenance listed in Section 8 of this manual. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR, or GCWR, ratings.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to an injury accident. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have an accident.

- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle automatic transmission in P for Park. With a manual transmission, shift the transmission into reverse. And with four-wheel-drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in neutral. Always, block or ″chock″ the trailer wheels.
- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**

  1. GVWR

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. GTW

3. GAWR

4. Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized (This requirement may limit the ability to always achieve the 10% to 15% range of tongue weight as a percentage of total trailer weight).

Towing Requirements — Tires

- Do not attempt to tow a trailer while using a compact spare tire.
- Proper tire inflation pressures are essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Tire Pressures for proper tire inflation procedures.
- Also, check the trailer tires for proper tire inflation pressures before trailer usage.
- Check for signs of tire wear or visible tire damage before towing a trailer. Refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Tread Wear Indicators for the proper inspection procedure.
- When replacing tires refer to the Tires–General Information section of this manual on Replacement Tires for proper tire replacement procedures. Replacing tires with a higher load carrying capacity will not increase the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limits.

Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

CAUTION!

If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (454 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

WARNING!

Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.

Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.

Towing Requirements — Trailer Lights & Wiring

Whenever you pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop lights and turn signals on the trailer are required for motoring safety.

Twelve trailer tow circuits are provided at the rear of the chassis. These circuits are unterminated and sealed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seven of the twelve circuits are the standard 7 pin trailer wiring circuits. Three of the twelve circuits are upfitter circuits used for aftermarket applications. Two of the twelve circuits are additional trailer circuits. For additional information about trailer tow circuits or other exterior lighting capabilities of your Dodge Truck, please refer to the Body Builder's Guide by accessing "www.dodge.com/bodybuilder" and choosing the appropriate links.

NOTE: Do not cut or splice wiring into the vehicles wiring harness.

WARNING!

Any work done to the vehicles electrical system, or wiring, should be performed by a qualified automotive technician, if done improperly it may cause damage to the electrical system wiring and could result in serious or fatal injury.

The following chart identifies the maximum electrical loads that the trailer tow output circuits are capable of supporting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Tow Additional Lamp Loads		
Output Functions	Maximum Current	Additional Bulbs Allowed Example Only. Other bulb combinations can be used as long as maximum current is not exceeded.
Stop/Turn Left	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop/turn
Stop/Turn Right	16A	2 #3157 bulbs for stop/turn
Trailer Park Lamps	14A	2 #1157 bulbs (two filament park/stop/turn) plus up to 24 #168 or #194 peanut bulbs.

Towing Tips

Before setting out on a trip, practice turning, stopping and backing the trailer in an area away from heavy traffic.

If using a manual transmission vehicle for trailer towing, all starts must be in FIRST gear to avoid excessive clutch slippage.

Towing Tips — Automatic Transmission

The "D" range can be selected when towing. However, if frequent shifting occurs while in this range, the "TOW HAUL" or "OD/OFF" range should be selected.

NOTE: Using the "TOW HAUL" or "OD/OFF" range while operating the vehicle under heavy operating conditions will improve performance and extend transmission life by reducing excessive shifting and heat build up. This action will also provide better engine braking.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The automatic transmission fluid and filter should be changed if you REGULARLY tow a trailer for more than 45 minutes of continuous operation. See Maintenance Schedule in section 8 of this manual for transmission fluid change intervals.

NOTE: Check the automatic transmission fluid level before towing.

Towing Tips — Tow/Haul (If Equipped)
To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, turn the "TOW HAUL OD/OFF" feature ON when driving in hilly areas or shift the transmission to Drive position 2 on more severe grades.

Towing Tips — Electronic Speed Control (If Equipped)

- Don't use in hilly terrain or with heavy loads.
- When using the speed control, if you experience speed drops greater than 10 mph (16 km/h), disengage until you can get back to cruising speed.
- Use speed control in flat terrain and with light loads to maximize fuel efficiency.

Towing Tips — Cooling System
To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

- ***City Driving***

When stopped for short periods of time, put transmission in neutral and increase engine idle speed.

- ***Highway Driving***

Reduce speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

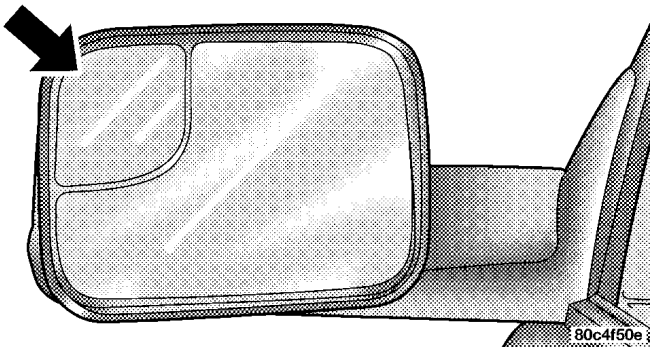
– ***Air Conditioning***
Turn off temporarily.

– refer to Cooling System Operating information in the Maintenance section of this manual for more information.

Trailer Towing Mirrors — If Equipped

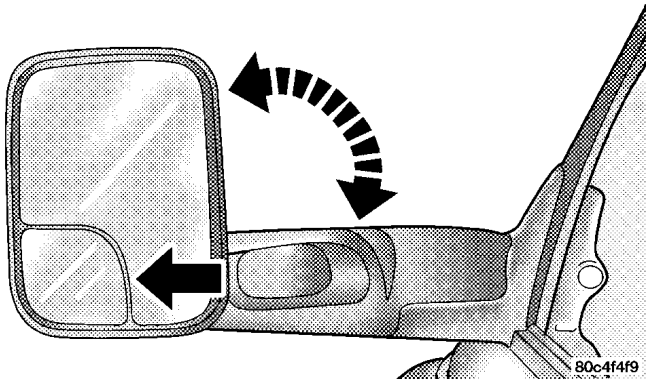
These mirrors are designed with an adjustable mirror head to provide a greater vision range when towing extra-wide loads. To change position inboard or outboard, the mirror head should be rotated (flipped Out or In). A small blindspot mirror is integrated onto the main mirror surface.

NOTE: Fold the 7 x 10 inch trailer towing mirrors rearward prior to entering an automated car wash.



Blindspot Mirror

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Trailer Towing Position

SNOWPLOW

Snowplow Prep Packages are available as a factory installed option. These packages include components necessary to equip your vehicle with a snowplow.

NOTE: Before installation of a snowplow it is highly recommended that the owner / installer obtain and follow the recommendations contained within the current Dodge Body Builders Guide. See your dealer, installer or snowplow manufacture for this information. There are unique electrical systems that must be connected to properly assure operator safety and prevent overloading vehicle systems.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airboat system in an accident. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual

CAUTION!

The "Lamp Out" indicator could illuminate if exterior lamps are not properly installed.

5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before plowing

- Check the hydraulic system for leaks and proper fluid level.
- Check the mounting bolts and nuts for proper tightness.
- Check the runners and cutting edge for excessive wear. The cutting edge should be 1/4 to 1/2 inch above ground in snow plowing position.
- Check that snowplow lighting is connected and functioning properly.

Snowplow Prep Package Model Availability

For Information about snowplow applications visit www.dodge.com or refer to the current Dodge Body Builders Guide.

1. The maximum number of occupants in the truck should not exceed two.

2. The total GVWR or the Front GAWR or the Rear GAWR should never be exceeded.

3. The snowplow prep packages are not available with the Sport Package.

4. Cargo capacity will be reduced by the addition of options or passengers, etc.

The loaded vehicle weight, including the snowplow system, all aftermarket accessories, driver, passengers, options, and cargo, must not exceed either the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVWR) or Gross Axle Weight (GAWR) ratings. These weights are specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label on the driver's side door opening.

NOTE: Detach the snowplow when transporting passengers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle front end wheel alignment was set to specifications at the factory without consideration for the weight of the plow. Front end tow-in should be checked and reset if necessary at the beginning and end of the snowplow season. This will help prevent uneven tire wear.

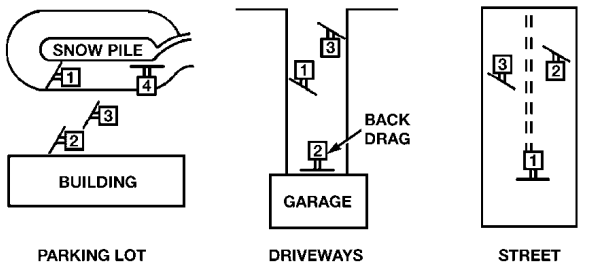
The blade should be lowered whenever the vehicle is parked.

Maintain and operate your vehicle and snowplow equipment following the recommendations provided by the specific snowplow manufacturer.

Over the Road Operation With Snowplow Attached

The blade restricts air flow to the radiator and causes the engine to operate at higher than normal temperatures. Therefore, when transporting the plow, angle the blade completely and position it as low as road or surface conditions permit. Do not exceed 40 mph (64 km/h). The operator should always maintain a safe stopping distance and allow adequate passing clearance.

Methods For Removing Snow



5

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Operating Tips

Under ideal snow plowing conditions, 20 mph (32 km / h) should be maximum operating speed. The operator should be familiar with the area and surface to be cleaned. Reduce speed and use extreme caution when plowing unfamiliar areas or under poor visibility.

NOTE: During snowplow usage on vehicles equipped with an overhead console module, the outside temperature display will show higher temperatures than the outside ambient temperature. The higher displayed temperature is due to blocked or reduced airflow to the underhood ambient temperature sensor by the snowplow. This is common and outside temperature display operation will return to normal when the snowplow is removed.

General Maintenance

Snowplows should be maintained in accordance with the plow manufacturer's instructions.

Keep all snowplow electrical connections and battery terminals clean and free of corrosion.

When plowing snow, to avoid transmission and drivetrain damage, the following precautions should be observed.

- Operate with transfer case in 4L when plowing small or congested areas where speeds are not likely to exceed 15 mph (24 km / h). At higher speeds operate in 4H.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions should use 4L range when plowing deep or heavy snow for extended periods of time to avoid transmission overheating.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not shift the transmission unless the engine has returned to idle and wheels have stopped. Make a practice of stepping on the brake pedal before shifting the transmission.

RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

Recreational Towing – 2 Wheel Drive Models

Recreational towing of 2 Wheel Drive models is not allowed. Towing with the rear wheels on the ground can result in severe transmission damage.

Recreational Towing – 4 Wheel Drive Models

CAUTION!

Failure to follow these requirements can cause severe damage to the transmission and/or transfer case.

CAUTION!

Internal damage to the transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when recreational towing.

NOTE: Both the Manual Shift and Electronic Shift transfer cases must be shifted into Neutral (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be placed in P (Park) position for recreational towing. Manual transmissions must be left in gear (not in neutral) for recreational towing. Refer below for the proper transfer case Neutral shifting procedure for your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recreational Towing Procedure — Manual Shift Transfer Case — If Equipped

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing:

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in N (NEUTRAL) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Shift automatic transmission to N (NEUTRAL), or depress the clutch on manual transmissions.
5. Shift transfer case lever into N (NEUTRAL).
6. Start the engine.
7. Shift automatic transmission into Reverse (R).
8. Release brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
9. Repeat steps 7 and 8 with the transmission in Drive (D).
10. Shut OFF the engine and place the ignition key to the unlocked OFF position.
11. Shift automatic transmission into P (PARK).
12. Apply the parking brake.
13. Attach vehicle to tow vehicle with tow bar.
14. Release the parking brake.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Damage to the automatic transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into P (PARK) with the transfer case in N (NEUTRAL) and the engine RUNNING. With the transfer case in N (NEUTRAL) ensure that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into P (PARK)

Returning to Normal Operation — Manual Shift Transfer Case

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Shut OFF the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to N (NEUTRAL), or depress the clutch on manual transmissions.
6. Shift transfer case lever to desired position.
7. Shift automatic transmission into P (Park).

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (NEUTRAL) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case N (NEUTRAL) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

- **Do not use a bumper mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and damage the internal parts.**

Recreational Towing Procedure — Electronic Shift Transfer Case — If Equipped

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in Neutral (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Turn the ignition key to the ON position, but do not start the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to Neutral (N) or depress clutch on manual transmission.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case Neutral (N) button for 4 seconds.

7. After shift is completed and the Neutral (N) light comes on release Neutral (N) button.

8. Start engine.

9. Shift automatic transmission into Reverse (R).

10. Release brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.

11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 with the transmission in Drive (D).

12. Shut engine OFF and place ignition key to the unlocked OFF position.

13. Shift automatic transmission into Park (P).

14. Apply parking brake.

15. Attach vehicle to tow vehicle with tow bar.

16. Release parking brake.

NOTE: Items 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) selection button, and must continue to be met until the 4 seconds elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of 3 - Key ON) are not met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) button or are no longer met during the 4 second timer, then the Neutral (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the Neutral (N) button is released.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key in not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing neutral (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into Park (P) with the transfer case in Neutral (N) and the engine RUNNING. With the transfer case in Neutral (N) ensure that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into Park (P).

Returning to Normal Operation — Electronic Shift Transfer Case

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage.

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut OFF the engine.
3. Turn the ignition key to the ON position, but do not start the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to Neutral (N) or depress clutch on manual transmission.
6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case Neutral (N) button for 1 second.
7. After the Neutral (N) indicator light turns off release the Neutral (N) button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. After the Neutral (N) button has been released the transfer case will shift to the position identified by the selector switch.

9. Shift automatic transmission into P (Park).

NOTE: The transfer case can not be shifted into Neutral (N) from the 4Auto (if equipped) position.

NOTE: Items 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) selection button, and must continue to be met until 1 second elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of 3 - key ON) are not met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) button or are no longer met during the 1 second time, then all of the mode position indicator lights will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the Neutral (N) button is released.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing neutral (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move despite the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

CAUTION!

- **Do not use a bumper mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and fluid loss will damage internal parts.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

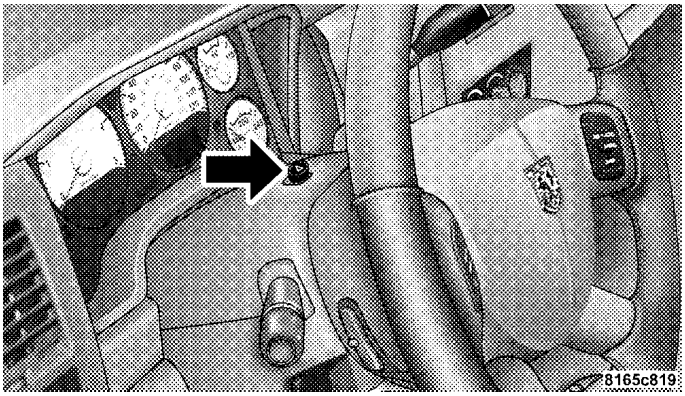
CONTENTS

- Hazard Warning Flasher 378
- Jacking And Tire Changing 379
  - 3500 Models – If Equipped 379
- Jacking Instructions 380
  - Tire Changing Procedure 380
- Hoisting 389
- Jump-Starting 390
  - With Portable Starting Unit 393
- Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 393
- Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped 394
- Towing A Disabled Vehicle 395
  - 4-Wheel- Drive Vehicles 396
  - 2–Wheel- Drive Vehicles 396

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER

The Hazard Warning switch is mounted on the top of the steering column as shown in the illustration.



Hazard Light Warning Switch

To engage the Hazard Warning lights, depress the button on the top of the steering column. When the Hazard Warning switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash off and on to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the button a second time to turn off the flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning lights will continue to operate even though the ignition switch is OFF.

NOTE: With extended use, the Hazard Warning lights may discharge your battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING

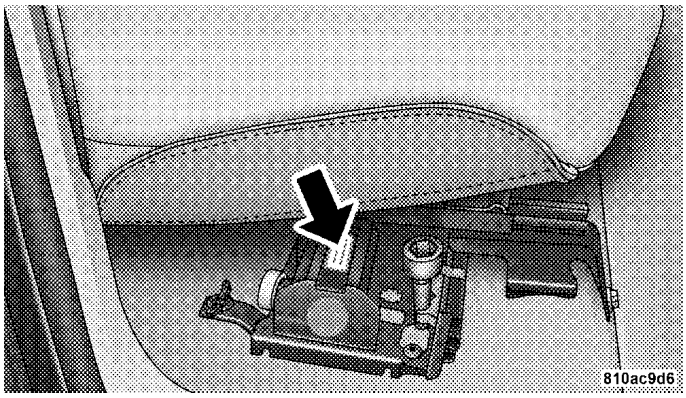
WARNING!

- **Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.**
- **The jack is designed to use as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.**

3500 Models – If Equipped

The jack and jack tools are stored under the front passenger seat. Lift the flap on the side of the seat for access.

Remove the jack and tools by removing the wing bolt and sliding the assembly from under the seat.



Jack Location

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

After using the jack and tools, always reinstall them in the original carrier and location. While driving you may experience, abrupt stopping, rapid acceleration, or sharp turns. A loose jack, tools, bracket or other objects in the vehicle may move around with force, resulting in serious injury.

4500/5500 Models
These vehicles do not come with a jack.

NOTE: Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment like a tire service company.

JACKING INSTRUCTIONS

Tire Changing Procedure

WARNING!

Getting under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never get any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.

Do not raise this vehicle using a bumper jack. The jack is designed as a tool for changing tires on this vehicle only. It is not recommended that the jack be used for service purposes or to lift more than one wheel at a time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE: Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment like a tire service company.

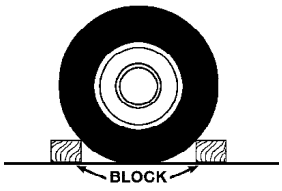
Preparations

Park the vehicle on a firm level surface, avoiding ice or slippery areas. Set the parking brake and place the gear selector in PARK (automatic transmission) or REVERSE (manual transmission). On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the "4L" position.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

- Turn on the Hazard Warning Flasher.



- Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.
- Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instructions

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

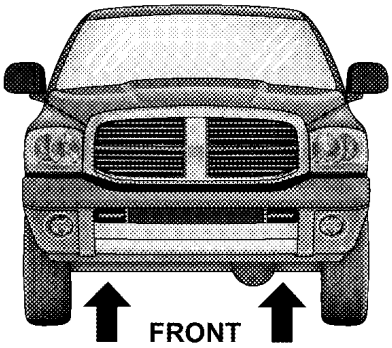
- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Apply the parking brake firmly before jacking.**
- **Never start the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated.**
- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**

1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.

2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.

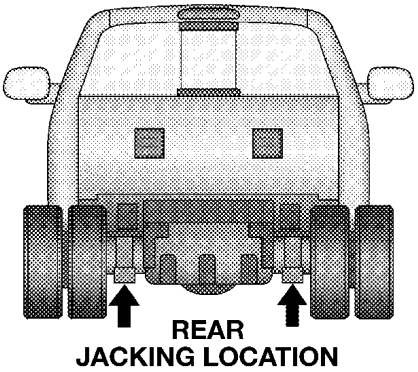
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the drive tubes extending to the front. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



819696fc

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tire's are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the jack tube extension and lug wrench.



81947743

Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

NOTE: If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumb wheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable and cause an accident. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.

6. Using the wheel wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. Correct nut tightness is 135 ft. lbs. (183 N·m) torque for single rear wheel (SRW) models and 145 ft. lbs. (197 N·m) for dual rear wheel models. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your dealer or at a service station.

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumb wheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack drive tube in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.

9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.

For single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the hub cap off. Insert the blade end into the pryoff notch and carefully pop off the hub cap with a back and forth motion.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps. The jack handle driver has a hook at one end that will fit in the pry off notch of the rear hub caps. Position the hook and pull out on the ratchet firmly. The hub cap should pop off. The wheel skins can now be removed. For the front hub cap on models use the blade on the end of the lug wrench to pry the caps off. The wheel skin can now be removed.

CAUTION!

Use a back and forth motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap finish may occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

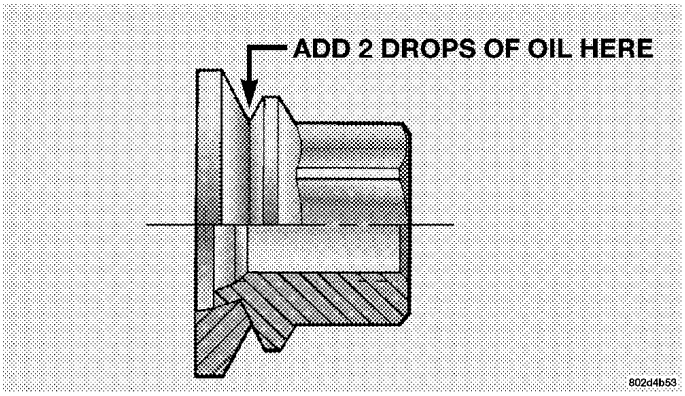
The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pry off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.

You must use the flat end of the lug wrench to pry off the wheel skins. Insert the flat tip completely and using a back and forth motion, loosen the wheel skin. Repeat this procedure around the tire until the skin pops off.

Replace the wheel skins first using a rubber mallet. When replacing the hub caps, tilt the cap retainer over the lugnut bolt circle and strike the high side down with a rubber mallet. Be sure that the hub caps and wheel skins are firmly seated around the wheel.

Dual Rear Wheels

Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add 2 drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer.



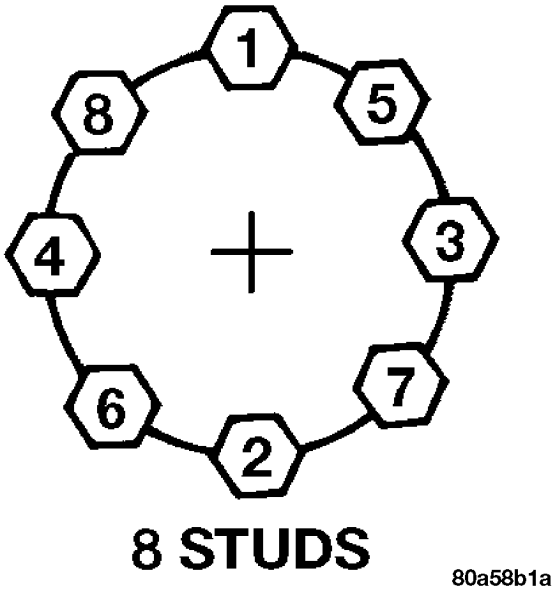
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

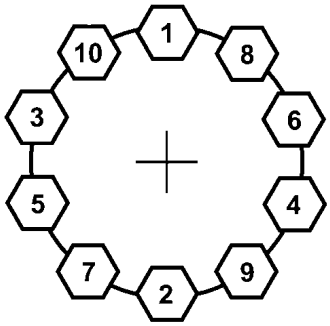
Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

NOTE: When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. Correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

These dual rear wheels should be tightened as follows:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



10 STUDS 81c372ea

1. Tighten the wheel nuts in the numbered sequence to a snug fit.

2. Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications at 100 miles (160 km) and after 500 miles (800 km).

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

Wheel Nut Torque

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the nut opposite to the nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved. Recommended torques are shown in the following chart.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Wheels	Type Nut	Stud Size	Torque Ft. Lbs.	Torque Newton Meters
	Cone	9/16-18	120-150	160-200
	Flanged	9/16-18	130-160	190-220

To Stow The Flat Or Spare (If Equipped)
Refer to Upfitters Body Builders Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (If Equipped).

HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations, refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts or the underbody.

CAUTION!

Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

JUMP-STARTING

WARNING!

To prevent personal injury or damage to clothing, do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin or fabrics. Do not lean over a battery when connecting jumper cables or allow cable clamps to touch each other. Keep open flames or sparks away from battery vent holes. Always wear eye protection when working with batteries.

Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source that has a greater than 12 volt system, i.e. do not use a 24 volt power source.

NOTE: Replacement batteries should both be of equal size to prevent damage to the vehicles charging system.

Your vehicle is equipped with two 12–volt batteries. If it becomes necessary to use a booster battery, with jumper cables, to start a vehicle's engine because its batteries are discharged, the following procedure should be followed:

Set the parking brake and place an automatic transmission in PARK (or NEUTRAL for a manual transmission). Turn off lights, heater and other electrical loads. Observe charge indicator (if equipped) in both batteries. If indicator (if equipped) is light or yellow on either battery, replace that battery.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

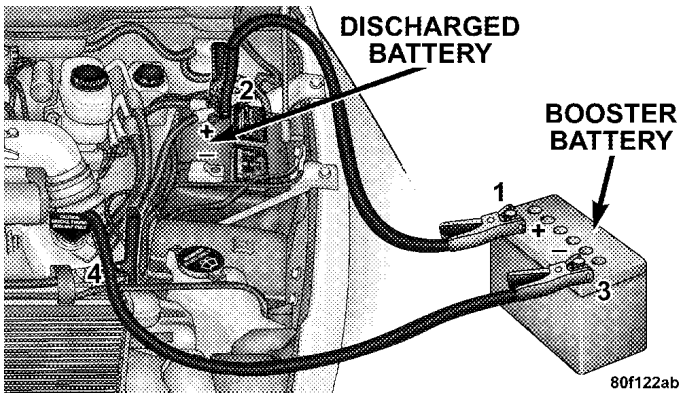
CAUTION!

Use the Jump Start Procedure only when the charge indicator (if equipped) in both batteries is dark in the center. Do not attempt jump starting when either battery charge indicator (if equipped) is bright or yellow. If charge indicator (if equipped) has a green dot in the center, failure to start is not due to a discharged battery and cranking system should be checked.

1. Attach one jumper cable to the positive terminal of booster battery and the other end of the same cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.

WARNING!

Do not permit vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Connect one end of the other jumper cable to negative (-) post of booster battery. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to a good ground on the engine block of the vehicle with the discharged battery. Make sure a good connection is made, free of dirt and grease.

WARNING!

- **Do not connect the cable to the negative post of the discharge battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode.**
- **During cold weather when temperatures are below freezing point, electrolyte in a discharged battery may freeze. Do not attempt jump starting because the battery could rupture or explode. The battery temperature must be brought up above freezing point before attempting jump start.**

3. Take care that the clamps from one cable do not inadvertently touch clamps from the other cable. Do not lean over the battery when making connection. The negative connection must provide good electrical conductivity and current carrying capacity.

4. After the engine is started or if the engine fails to start, cables must be disconnected in the following order:

a. Disconnect the negative cable at the engine ground.

b. Disconnect the negative cable at the negative post on booster battery.

c. Disconnect the cable from the positive post of both batteries.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Any procedure other than above could result in:

1. Personal injury caused by electrolyte squirting out the battery vent;

2. Personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion;

3. Damage to charging system of booster vehicle or of immobilized vehicle.

With Portable Starting Unit

There are many types of these units available. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for necessary precautions and operation.

CAUTION!

It is very important that the starting unit operating voltage does not exceed 12 Volts D.C. or damage to battery, starter motor, alternator, or electrical system may occur.

FREEING A STUCK VEHICLE

If vehicle becomes stuck in snow, sand, or mud, it can often be moved by a rocking motion. Move the gear selector rhythmically between DRIVE and REVERSE (automatic transmissions) and between 1st and REVERSE (manual transmissions), while applying slight pressure to the accelerator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In general, the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure to maintain the rocking motion without spinning the wheels or racing the engine is most effective. Racing the engine or spinning the wheels, due to the frustration of not freeing the vehicle, may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission selector in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

NOTE: For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

Chains are not recommended for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps and chains may break, causing serious injury.

CAUTION!

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for the purpose, following equipment manufacturer's instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to the main structural members of the vehicle—not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws applying to vehicles under tow must be observed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4-Wheel- Drive Vehicles

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the transfer case while towing, always use one of the following methods.

NOTE: The Transfer Case must be in the neutral position, and the transmission must be in Park (Automatic Transmission), or in gear (Manual Transmission) to tow a 4WD vehicle with one end of the vehicle raised.

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

2–Wheel- Drive Vehicles

Provided that transmission is operable, tow on a flatbed or with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on a dolly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- ■ Engine Compartment — 6.7L Diesel Engine 400
- ■ Engine Compartment— 5.7L Gas Engine 401
- ■ Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) 402
  - □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message 402
- ■ Replacement Parts 403
- ■ Engine Data Plate 403
- ■ Dealer Service 403
- ■ Service Information 404
- ■ Maintenance Procedures 406
  - □ Engine Oil 406
  - □ Drive Belts (Gas Engines) 413
  - □ Drive Belt (Diesel Engines) 413
  - □ Engine Air Cleaner Filter (Gas Engines) 413
  - □ Engine Air Cleaner Filter (Diesel Engines) 414
  - □ Draining Fuel / Water Separator Filter (Diesel Engines) 417
  - □ Engine Fuel Filter (Gas Engines) 420
  - □ Spark Plugs (Gas Engines) 420

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Catalytic Converter (Gas Engines) 420
- Intervention Regeneration Strategy – EVIC Message Process Flow (Catalyst Full Message) (Diesel Engines Only) 422
- Emission-Related Components (Gas Engines) . . .425
- Maintenance Free Battery (Gas Engines) 425
- Maintenance Free Batteries (Diesel Engines) . . .426
- Air Conditioner Maintenance 427
- Power Steering — Fluid Check 428
- Front Suspension Ball Joints 429
- Steering Linkage — Inspection 429
- Front Prop Shaft Lubrication 430
- Front Axle Universal Drive Joints And Ball Joints 430
- Body Lubrication 430
- Windshield Wiper Blades 431
- Windshield Washers 431
- Exhaust System 432
- Cooling System 433
- Fan 439
- Charge Air Cooler — Inter-Cooler (Diesel Engines) 439
- Hoses And Vacuum/Vapor Harnesses 440
- Fuel System Connections 440
- Brake System 440
- Clutch Hydraulic System 443
- Clutch Linkage 443

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- □ Rear Axle And 4X4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level 443
- □ Transfer Case — If Equipped 445
- □ Manual Transmission — If Equipped 445
- □ Automatic Transmission (Gas Engine Only) . . .446
- □ Automatic Transmission (Diesel Engine Only) 448
- □ Front And Rear Wheel Bearings 451
- □ Noise Control System Required Maintenance & Warranty 451
- □ Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion 457

■ Fuses (Integrated Power Module) 462

■ Vehicle Storage 467

■ Replacement Light Bulbs 468

■ Bulb Replacement 468

- □ Headlight (Halogen)/Front Park And Turn Lights 468
- □ Fog Lights 472
- □ Cab Top Clearance Lights — If Equipped 473

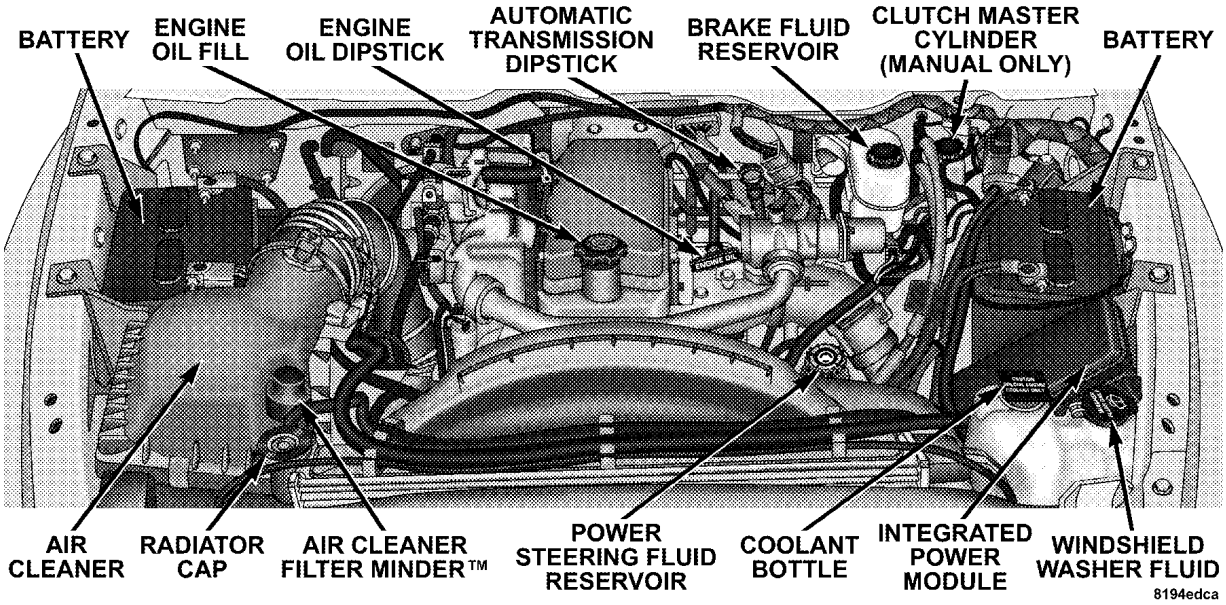
■ Fluid And Capacities 474

■ Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts 476

- □ Engine 476
- □ Chassis 478

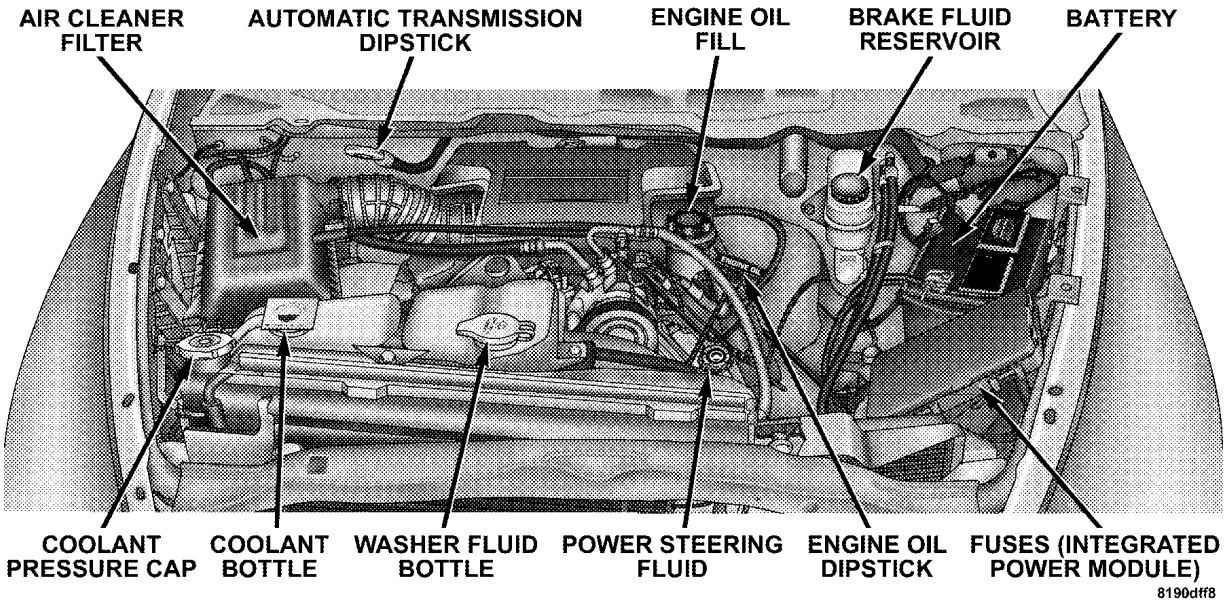
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COMPARTMENT — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COMPARTMENT— 5.7L GAS ENGINE



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM (OBD II)

Vehicles equipped with California emissions controls have a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBDII. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the "Malfunction Indicator Light." It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be driveable and not need towing, see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the "Malfunction Indicator Light" on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.

If the "Malfunction Indicator Light" is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

If the vehicles diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap in loose, improperly installed, or damaged, a GASCAP message will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). Resolving the problem will turn the MIL light off.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine Mopar® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to insure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-Mopar parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

ENGINE DATA PLATE

Use the information from the engine data plate when discussing service or sourcing parts for your engine. The engine data plate is located on the intake side of the breather cover.

DEALER SERVICE

Your dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

SERVICE INFORMATION

Mopar Fluids, Lubricants and Parts are available from your dealer and will help you keep your vehicle operating at its best. Your dealer also has the qualified service personnel, special tools and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these manuals before attempting any procedure yourself. See Service Publications information at the back of this manual.

CAUTION!

To maintain your vehicle safely follow these guidelines:

- Watch your vehicle's mileage and check your **Maintenance Schedules** regularly for required servicing. Excessive wear or damage to certain vehicle components can result if required services are not performed.
- If you have your vehicle undercoated, inspect for undercoating material on the propeller shafts. Such material could cause the shafts to become unbalanced and result in drivetrain vibrations. Remove any undercoating with solvent.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If you have your vehicle undercoated, make sure no undercoating material is sprayed on the exhaust system or components of the seat belt system.

NOTE: It is not possible for the manufacturer and Cummins, Inc. to anticipate every possible circumstance that can involve a potential hazard.

WARNING!

To maintain your vehicle safely and avoid personal injury, follow these guidelines:

- Never spray or pour diesel fuel, flammable liquid or starting fluids (ether) into the air cleaner assembly, air intake piping or turbocharger inlet in an attempt to start the vehicle, unintended engine acceleration may occur.
- Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and be hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.
- If an engine has been operating and the coolant is hot, allow the engine to cool before you slowly loosen the filler cap and relieve the pressure from the cooling system.
- To avoid burns, remember that the engine components will stay hot after the engine is shut off.
- Do not use gasoline or other flammable materials to clean parts. Always use approved cleaning solvents.
- Relieve all pressure in the fuel, oil and cooling systems before any lines, fittings or related items are removed or disconnected. Be alert for possible pressure when disconnecting any device from a system that utilizes

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pressure. Do not check for pressure leaks with your hand. High pressure oil or fuel can cause personal injury.

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

- **Important:** All maintenance other than that listed in this manual, as well as some procedures listed here, **MUST** be performed by your local Dodge Truck Dealer. Your authorized Dodge Dealer has been trained and has the necessary parts to maintain your engine.

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides the maintenance items for which there are fixed maintenance intervals, there are other items that should operate satisfactorily without periodic maintenance. However, if a malfunction of these items does occur, it could adversely affect the engine or vehicle performance. These items should be inspected if a malfunction is observed or suspected.

Engine Oil

Checking Oil Level

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. Check the oil level at regular intervals. The best time to check the oil level is before starting the engine after it has been parked overnight. When checking oil after operating the

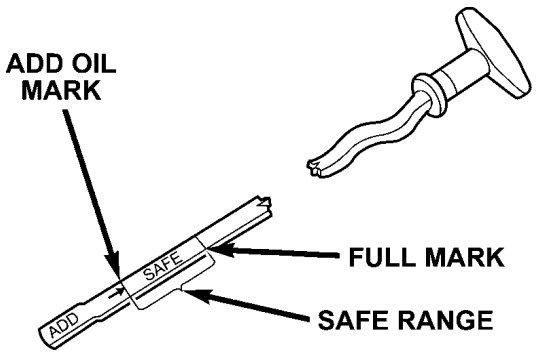
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

engine, first ensure the engine is at full operating temperature, then wait for 30 minutes (6.7L Diesel Engine), and 15 minutes (5.7L Gas Engine) after engine shutdown to check the oil.

Checking the oil while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level readings. Always maintain the oil level within the SAFE zone on the dipstick. Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the bottom of the SAFE zone will result in a reading at the top of the safe zone on these engines.

CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.



Never operate the engine with oil level below the "ADD" mark or above the upper "SAFE" mark.

Change Engine Oil (Gas Engines)

Follow the Gas Engine Maintenance Schedule for recommended engine oil change intervals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Selection (Gas Engines)

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacture only recommends engine oils that are API certified and meet the requirements of DaimlerChrysler Material Standard MS-6395. Use Mopar or an equivalent oil meeting the specification MS-6395.

American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacture only recommends API Certified engine oils.

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)

For trucks with a 5.7L engine operating under a gross combined weight rating of 14,000 lbs or greater, SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures. For all other trucks with a 5.7L engine, operating under a gross weight rating less than 14,000 lbs SAE 5W-20 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures. These engine oils improve low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy. Your engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your vehicle.

For information on engine oil filler cap location, see the Engine Compartment illustration in this section.

Lubricants which do not have both, the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Change Engine Oil (Diesel Engines)

Follow the Diesel Maintenance Schedule for recommended engine oil change intervals.

Engine Oil Selection (Diesel Engines)

For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacture only recommends engine oils that are API CJ-4 certified and meet the requirements of DaimlerChrysler. Use Mopar or an equivalent oil meeting the specification MS-10902. Products meeting Cummins CES 20081 may also be used. The identification of these engine oils are typically located on the back of the oil container.

American Petroleum Institute (API) Engine Oil Identification Symbol

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacture only recommends API Certified engine oils.

Oils with a high ash content may produce deposits on valves that can progress to guttering and valve burning. A maximum sulfated ash content of 1.00 mass % is recommended for all oil used in the engine.

The same oil change interval is to be followed for synthetic oil as for petroleum based oil. Also, synthetic oil must meet the same performance specifications as petroleum oil.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)

Use SAE 15W-40 Engine Oil that meets DaimlerChrysler Materials Standard MS-10902 and the API CJ-4 engine oil category.

Engine oil not designated by the DaimlerChrysler or Cummins Material Standards and API CJ-4 should not be used, engine and exhaust system durability may be compromised. For lower temperature operation SAE 5W-40 engine oils may be used. These oils must meet the same requirements as stated previously. Your engine oil filler cap also shows the recommended engine oil viscosity for your vehicle.

Synthetic Engine Oils

You may use synthetic engine oils provided the recommended oil quality requirements are met, and the recommended maintenance intervals for oil and filter changes are followed.

Materials Added to Engine Oil

The manufacture strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes or lube odorants) to the engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and it's performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

NOTE: The manufacturer offers a lube odorant (Mopar Diesel Fresh) for diesel engines crankcases. The lube odorant is recommended by the manufacturer to reduce the sulfur smell that may occur during engine idling.

Engine Oil Filter

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct part number. The engine oil filter should be changed at **every** engine oil change.

Engine Oil And Filter — Change

Operate the engine until the coolant temperature reaches 140°F (60°C). Shut the engine off. Remove the oil drain plug.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use a container that can hold at least 12 quarts (11.3 Liters) to hold the used oil.

Always check the condition of the used oil. This can give you an indication of some engine problems that might exist.

- Thin, black oil indicates fuel dilution.
- Milky discoloration indicates coolant dilution.

Clean the area around the oil filter base. Remove the filter from the underside of the vehicle using a cap style oil filter wrench.

Clean the gasket surface of the filter mount. The filter gasket can stick on the filter mount. Make sure it is removed.

Change the engine oil filter with every engine oil change.

Only a high quality MOPAR filter should be used to assure most efficient service.

CAUTION!

The filtering medium of other aftermarket filters may disintegrate. Debris from failed filters may plug the piston oil cooling nozzles, resulting in scuffed pistons and engine failure.

CAUTION!

Fill the oil filter element with clean oil before installation. Use the same type oil that will be used in the engine. When filling the oil filter, prevent foreign material from falling into the filter. Severe engine damage may occur.

Apply a light film of lubricating oil to the sealing surface of the filter gasket before installing the filter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Overtightening may distort the threads or damage the filter element seal.

Install the filter as specified by the filter manufacturer. Turn the filter 3/4 to one full turn after making contact with the gasket.

Check the condition of the threads and sealing surface on the oil pan and drain plug.

Install the drain plug and sealing washer and tighten to 37 ft-lbs. (50 N·m).

Use only high-quality multi-grade lubricating oil in your engine. Choose the correct oil for your operating conditions as outlined in the Selection of Engine Oil.

Fill the engine with the correct grade of new oil.

Start the engine and operate it at idle for several minutes. Check for leaks at the lubricating oil filter and oil pan drain plug.

Run the engine until it has reached operating temperature, stop the engine. Wait approximately 15 minutes to let the oil in the upper parts of the engine drain back to the pan. Check the oil level again.

Add oil as necessary to bring the level to the "SAFE" mark on the dipstick.

Disposing Of Used Engine Oil And Filter

Care should be taken in disposing of the used engine fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your local dealer, service station, or governmental agency for advice on recycling programs and where used fluids and filters can be safely discarded in your area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drive Belts (Gas Engines)

Belt tension is controlled by means of an automatic tensioner. No belt tension adjustments are required. However, belt and belt tensioner condition should be inspected at the specified intervals and replaced if required. See your authorized dealer for service.

At the mileage indicated in the maintenance schedule, all belts and tensioner should be checked for condition. Improper belt tension can cause belt slippage and failure.

Belts should be inspected for evidence of cuts, cracks, glazing or frayed cords and replaced if there is indication of damage which could result in belt failure. Low generator belt tension can cause battery failure.

Also check belt routing to make sure there is no interference between the belts and other engine components.

Drive Belt (Diesel Engines)

Inspection

Check the belt for intersecting cracks.

- Transverse (across the belt width) cracks are acceptable.
- Longitudinal (direction of belt length) cracks that intersect with transverse cracks are NOT acceptable.

Replace the belt if it has unacceptable cracks, is frayed or has pieces of material missing.

The engine speed sensor, located near the damper, should be inspected for damage if a belt is frayed.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter (Gas Engines)

Follow the appropriate Maintenance Schedule for recommended Air Cleaner Replacement intervals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc) can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter (Diesel Engines)

CAUTION!

All air entering the engine intake must be filtered. The abrasive particles in unfiltered air will cause rapid wear to engine components.

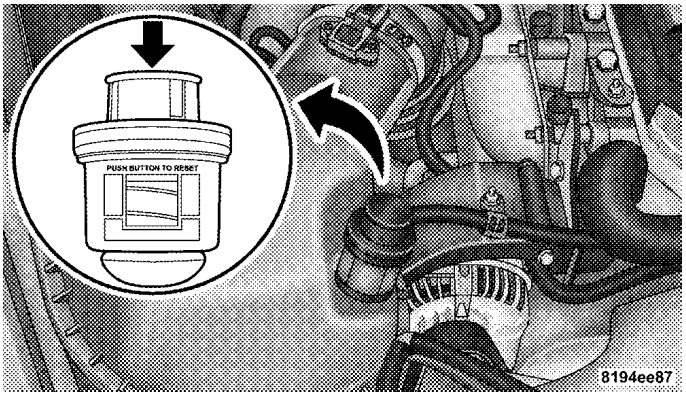
The air filter housing on your Diesel Ram is equipped with a Filter Minder™. This is an air flow restriction gauge that will indicate when the filter element needs to be replaced.

Do not remove the top of the air filter housing to inspect the filter element on your diesel engine under normal operating conditions.

NOTE: The air filter housing contains a Mass Air Flow sensor. This sensor is critical to proper engine operation and component longevity. Any damage or modification

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

to this sensor could result in major engine and/or exhaust aftertreatment damage. This includes the use of non-approved air filters. Use only MOPAR® approved air filters or equivalent.



The clear plastic housing on the Filter Minder™ allows you to view the amount of air pressure drop across the filter element. It consists of a diaphragm and a calibrated spring sealed inside the plastic housing. As the air cleaner filter becomes clogged and air pressure drop across the filter element increases, a yellow disc travels along a graduated scale on the side of the Filter Minder™.

The yellow disc will always show the greatest restriction experienced by the filter element. When the disc reaches the red zone, the filter element may need to be replaced. There is no other time or mileage interval for changing the air cleaner filter element.

If the vehicle experiences a sudden loss of engine power when being driven in heavy snow or rain or when plowing snow, check the Filter Minder™

- If the Filter Minder™ is showing a plugged filter, the filter should be visually inspected for snow/ice build up or extreme water saturation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If the filter is not damaged, remove all snow/ice, reinstall filter and reset the Filter Minder™.

A visual inspection of the air cleaner filter element is never recommended under normal circumstances. A badly restricted element may appear clean while a soiled element may be quite effective in filtering particles without restricting air flow. Rely on the Filter Minder™ to determine when a filter change is necessary.

After a new filter element is inserted, press the rubber button on the top of the Filter Minder™. This action will reset the yellow disc to the clean position.

CAUTION!

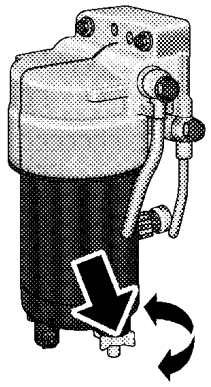
When using an engine cleaner or a degreaser, be sure to wrap and tape the Filter Minder™ to protect the plastic housing from damage and discoloration.

CAUTION!

Many aftermarket performance air filter elements do not adequately filter the air entering the engine. Use of such filters can severely damage your engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter (Diesel Engines)



818e32b1

CAUTION!

Do not drain the fuel/water separator filter when the engine is running.

CAUTION!

Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.

NOTE: The fuel filter and water separator assembly is located on the driver's side of the engine. The best access to the water drain valve is through the driver's side wheel well.

NOTE: Care should be taken in disposing of used fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your local dealer, service station, or government

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

agency for advice on recycling programs and for where used fluids and filters can be properly disposed of in your area.

Drain a small amount from the fuel/water separator filter monthly or when the WATER IN FUEL indicator lamp is on. Turn the drain valve, located on the bottom of the filter, counterclockwise and allow any accumulated water to drain. Leave the drain valve open until all water and contaminants have been removed. Close the drain valve, by turning it clockwise, when clean fuel is visible.

NOTE: The Fuel / Water separator drain valve is located on the bottom of the fuel filter housing.

If more than a couple ounces of fuel has been drained, follow the directions below for "Priming if the engine has run out of fuel."

WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

Priming if the engine has run out of fuel

1. Add a substantial quantity of fuel to the tank 5 to 10 gallons (19L to 38L).

2. Crank the engine for 1 to 2 seconds. If the engine does not start, then release the key or starter button back to the RUN position (do not turn the key back to the OFF position). The electric fuel transfer pump will continue to run and purge air from the system for about 25 seconds. After 25 seconds, attempt to start the engine again.

3. Start the engine using the Normal Starting Procedure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Repeat the procedure if the engine does not start.

CAUTION!

Do not engage the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow two minutes between the cranking intervals.

NOTE: The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.

CAUTION!

Diesel fuel will damage black top paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.

WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and be hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.

CAUTION!

Due to lack of lubricants in alcohol or gasoline, the use of these fuels can cause damage to the fuel system.

NOTE: A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-6751 may be used with your Cummins Diesel equipped vehicle. Use of bio-diesel

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

mixture in excess of 5% can negatively impact the on-engine fuel filter's ability to separate water from the fuel, resulting in high pressure fuel system corrosion or damage.

NOTE: As sufficient testing has not been completed, ethanol blends are not recommended or approved for use with your Cummins Diesel equipped vehicle.

NOTE: In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins Diesel equipped vehicle.

Engine Fuel Filter (Gas Engines)

A plugged fuel filter can cause stalling, limit the speed at which a vehicle can be driven or cause hard starting. Should an excessive amount of dirt accumulate in the fuel tank, frequent filter replacement may be necessary.

Spark Plugs (Gas Engines)

Spark plugs must fire properly to assure engine performance and emission control. New plugs should be installed at the specified mileage. The entire set should be replaced if there is any malfunction due to a faulty spark plug, malfunctioning spark plugs can damage the catalytic converter. For proper type of replacement spark plugs, refer to the Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts section in this manual.

Catalytic Converter (Gas Engines)

The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emission control device.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may indicate severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, the vehicle should be stopped, the engine shut off and the vehicle allowed to cool. Thereafter, service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To minimize the possibility of catalyst damage:

- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idling or malfunctioning operating conditions.

Intervention Regeneration Strategy – EVIC Message Process Flow (Catalyst Full Message) (Diesel Engines Only)

Your new Cummins 6.7L diesel meets all EPA Heavy Duty Diesel Engine Emissions Standards, resulting in the lowest emitting diesel engine ever produced.

To achieve these emission standards your vehicle is equipped with state of the art engine and exhaust system. The engine and exhaust aftertreatment system work together to achieve the EPA Heavy Duty Diesel Engine Emissions Standards. These systems are seamlessly integrated into your vehicle and managed by the Cummins 6.7L engine Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM manages engine combustion to allow the exhaust system's catalyst to trap and burn Particulate Matter (PM) pollutants, with no input or interaction on your part.

Additionally, the overhead console in your vehicle has the ability to alert you to additional maintenance required on your truck or engine. Refer to the following messages that may be displayed on your Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC):

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

Service CCV Filter

The 6.7L Cummins engine utilizes a Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) system. This system filters and recycles gasses produced in the crankcase during the normal combustion process. Service CCV Filter will be displayed on the overhead console of your Dodge truck if the CCV filter is due for required maintenance. This filter is located on the top of the engine valve cover. For additional information, see your Dodge truck dealer.

Catalyst Full See Owner Manual

Catalyst Full See Owner Manual will be displayed on the overhead console of your vehicle if the exhaust particulate filter reaches 80% of its maximum storage capacity. Under conditions of exclusive short duration and low speed driving cycles, your Cummins engine and exhaust aftertreatment system may never reach the conditions required to remove the trapped PM, if this occurs Catalyst Full See Owner Manual will be displayed on the overhead console in your vehicle. If this message is displayed you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition.

Catalyst Stat::::::::::80%

Catalyst Stat::::::::::80% will replace the message Catalyst Full See Owner Manual after it is displayed for one minute. The engine Powertrain Control Module (PCM) will continue to monitor the amount of particulate matter

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

trapped in the particulate filter. This message indicates the percentage of the particulate filter capacity that has been used.

By simply driving your vehicle at highway speeds for as little as 45 minutes you can remedy the condition in the particulate filter system and allow your Cummins engine and exhaust Aftertreatment system to remove the trapped PM and restore the system to normal operating condition.

Catalyst Stat::::::::::::80%, 90%, 99%

Catalyst Stat::::::::::::80%, 90%, 99% If you are unable to drive your vehicle under these conditions for an extended period of time after the initial warning notification, the Engine PCM will continue to monitor the particulate filter and will display the progression of particulate filter usage (80, 90, 99%) on the EVIC message center.

CATALYST FULL SERVICE REQD

If the particulate filter reaches 99% of it's capacity the overhead console in your vehicle will chime twice and display the message CATALYST FULL SERVICE REQD. At this point the engine PCM will register a fault code, the instrument panel will display a MIL light and the engine PCM will derate the truck reducing its horsepower and torque output.

The PCM derates the engine in order to limit the likelihood of permanent damage to the aftertreatment system. If this condition is not corrected and a dealer service is not performed, extensive exhaust aftertreatment damage can occur. In order to correct this condition it will be necessary to have the truck serviced by your local authorized dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emission-Related Components (Gas Engines)

Positive Crankcase (PCV) Valve

Proper operation of the crankcase ventilation system requires that the PCV valve be free of sticking or plugging from deposits. Deposits can accumulate in the PCV valve and passages with increasing mileage. Have the PCV valve, hoses, and passages checked for proper operation at the intervals specified. If the valve is plugged or sticking, replace with a new valve— **do not attempt to clean the old PCV valve!** Check the ventilation hoses for indications of damage, weepage or plugging with deposits. Replace if necessary.

Maintenance Free Battery (Gas Engines)

The top of the maintenance free battery is permanently sealed. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

WARNING!

- **Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution and can burn or even blind you. Don't allow battery fluid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing. Don't lean over a battery when attaching clamps. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the area immediately with large amounts of water.**
- **Battery gas is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or sparks away from the battery. Don't use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output greater than 12 volts. Don't allow cable clamps to touch each other.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

- **It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked (+) positive and negative (-) and identified on the battery case.**
- **If a "fast charger" is used while battery is in vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.**

Maintenance Free Batteries (Diesel Engines)

The top of the maintenance free batteries are permanently sealed. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

NOTE: Replacement batteries should both be of equal capacity to prevent damage to the vehicle's charging system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked (+) positive and negative (-) and identified on the battery case. Also, if a "fast charger" is used while battery is in vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.

WARNING!

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Always wash hands after handling the battery.

Battery Blanket Usage

A battery loses 60% of its cranking power as the battery temperature decreases to 0°F (-18°). For the same decrease in temperature, the engine requires twice as much power to crank at the same RPM. The use of 120 VAC powered battery blankets will greatly increase starting capability at low temperatures. Suitable battery blankets are available from your authorized Mopar® dealer.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an Authorized Dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

NOTE: Refer to Section 3 of the Warranty Information book for further warranty information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Section 3 of the Warranty Information book for further warranty information.**
- **The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced repairman.**

Refrigerant Recovery and Recycling

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by dealers or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

Power Steering — Fluid Check

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through a certified DaimlerChrysler Dealership."

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to insure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturers recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Front Suspension Ball Joints

The ball joints originally supplied with the vehicle are permanently lubricated at the factory and do not require service. The ball joints and seals should be inspected whenever the vehicle is serviced for other reasons.

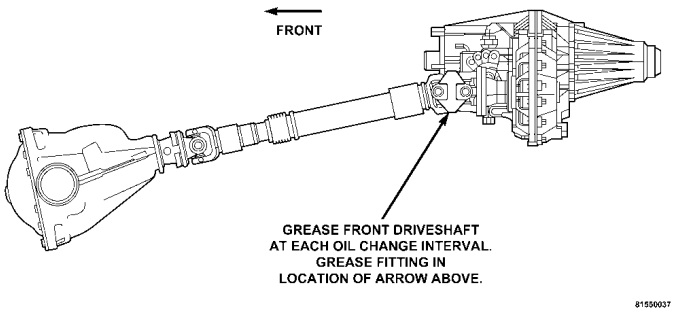
Steering Linkage — Inspection

Whenever the vehicle is hoisted, all steering linkage joints should be inspected for evidence of damage. If seals are damaged, parts should be replaced to prevent leakage or contamination of the grease.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Prop Shaft Lubrication

Lubricate the front driveshaft grease fitting at each oil change listed in the appropriate Maintenance Schedule for your vehicle. Use Mopar® type MS-6560 (lithium based grease), or equivalent.



Front Driveshaft Grease Fitting

Front Axle Universal Drive Joints And Ball Joints

The front axle universal joint and ball joints are permanently lubricated and do not require servicing.

Body Lubrication

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, doors, liftgate and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should also be given to hood latching components to insure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the fall and spring. Apply a small

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

amount of a high quality lubricant such as Mopar® Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

Windshield Wiper Blades

The rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield should be cleaned periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

Windshield Washers

The fluid reservoir is located under the hood and should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer solvent only (not radiator antifreeze).

When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe clean the wiper blades, this will help blade performance.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.

After the engine has warmed, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Mopar All Weather Windshield Washer Solution, used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces the freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace parts as required.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO) which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, follow the preceding safety tips.

Exhaust System Rubber Isolator and Loop-Type Hanger — If Equipped

Inspect surfaces whenever the vehicle is hoisted for rubber to metal separation or deep cracks. If, however, excessively deep localized cracks are present, or any part of the exhaust system abnormally contacts the underbody hardware, the isolator and/or hanger should be replaced.

Cooling System

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot coolant or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, don't open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

Engine Coolant Checks

Check the engine coolant (antifreeze) protection every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If coolant is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check the front of the A/C condenser for any

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean by gently spraying water from a garden hose vertically down the face of the condenser.

Check the coolant recovery bottle tubing for brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts and tightness of the connection at the bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

Extremely cold ambient temperature may require the addition of a "winter front" for effective operation of the cab heating/cooling system. Make certain that a percentage of the radiator is exposed for adequate air flow through the charge air cooler and automatic transmission oil cooler. The percentage of opening must be increased with the increasing ambient air temperature and/or engine load. If the cooling fan can be heard cycling frequently, increase the size of the opening in the winter front.

Coolant bottle level check

The coolant reserve system provides a quick visual method of determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the engine idling, and warmed to the normal operating temperature, the level of the coolant on the coolant bottle should be between the fluid level marks. Check the coolant level whenever the hood is raised.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no longer a need to remove the coolant pressure cap except for checking coolant freeze point or replacement with new antifreeze coolant.

WARNING!

Never add coolant to the radiator when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove pressure cap to cool overheated engine! The coolant is under pressure and severe scalding could result.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cooling System — Drain, Flush and Refill

At the intervals shown on the Maintenance Schedules, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled.

If the solution is dirty or contains a considerable amount of sediment, clean and flush with a reliable cooling system cleaner. Follow with a thorough rinsing to remove all deposits and chemicals. Properly dispose of old antifreeze solution.

Selection Of Coolant

Use only the manufacturers recommended coolant, refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct coolant type.

CAUTION!

Mixing of coolants other than specified HOAT engine coolants, may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. If a non-HOAT coolant is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, it should be replaced with the specified coolant as soon as possible.

Do not use plain water alone or alcohol base engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.

This vehicle has not been designed for use with Propylene Glycol based coolants. Use of Propylene Glycol based coolants is not recommended.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Coolant

Your vehicle has been built with an improved engine coolant that allows extended maintenance intervals. This coolant can be used up to 5 Years or 100,000 miles before replacement. To prevent reducing this extended maintenance period, it is important that you use the same coolant throughout the life of your vehicle. Please review these recommendations for using Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) coolant.

When adding coolant, a minimum solution of 50% recommended Mopar Antifreeze/ Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology), or equivalent, in water should be used. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below −34°F (−37°C) are anticipated.

Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

NOTE: Mixing coolant types will decrease the life of the engine coolant and will require more frequent coolant changes.

Cooling System Pressure Cap

The cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of coolant, and to insure that coolant will return to the radiator from the coolant recovery bottle.

The cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

- **The warning words "DO NOT OPEN HOT" on the cooling system pressure cap are a safety precaution. Never add coolant when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove the cap to cool an overheated engine. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap while the system is hot or under pressure.**
- **Do not use a pressure cap other than the one specified for your vehicle. Personal injury or engine damage may result.**

Disposal Of Used Engine Coolant

Used ethylene glycol based engine coolant is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. Do not store ethylene glycol-based engine coolant in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. Prevent ingestion by animals and children. If ingested by a child, contact a physician immediately. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

Coolant Level

The coolant bottle provides a quick visual method for determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the engine cold, the level of the coolant in the coolant recovery bottle should be between the ranges indicated on the bottle.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the radiator cap unless checking for coolant freeze point or replacing coolant. Advise your service attendant of this. As long as the engine operating temperature is satisfactory, the coolant bottle need only be checked once a month.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When additional coolant is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Points To Remember

NOTE: When the vehicle is stopped after a few miles (a few kilometers) of operation, you may observe vapor coming from the front of the engine compartment. This is normally a result of moisture from rain, snow, or high humidity accumulating on the radiator and being vaporized when the thermostat opens, allowing hot coolant to enter the radiator.

If an examination of your engine compartment shows no evidence of radiator or hose leaks, the vehicle may be safely driven. The vapor will soon dissipate.

- Do not overfill the coolant recovery bottle.
- Check coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant recovery bottle. If antifreeze needs to be added, contents of coolant recovery bottle must also be protected against freezing.
- If frequent coolant additions are required, or if the level in the coolant recovery bottle does not drop when the engine cools, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.
- Maintain coolant concentration at 50% HOAT engine coolant (minimum) and distilled water for proper corrosion protection of your engine which contains aluminum components.
- Make sure that the radiator and coolant recovery bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.
- Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean, also.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not change the thermostat for summer or winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory coolant performance, poor gas mileage, and increased emissions.

Fan

Inspection

Check the fan for cracks and bent or broken blades. If any of these conditions exist, you must replace the fan. Make sure it is securely mounted.

NOTE: This service procedure must be performed by a trained service technician. Make arrangements with your authorized Dodge Truck Dealer for this inspection.

Charge Air Cooler — Inter-Cooler (Diesel Engines)

The charge air cooler is positioned between the radiator and the air conditioner condenser. Air enters the engine through the air cleaner and passes through the turbo-charger where it is pressurized. This pressurized air rapidly reaches high temperature. The air is then directed through a hose to the charge air cooler and through another hose to the intake manifold of the engine. The air entering the engine has been cooled by about 50 to 100 degrees Fahrenheit. This cooling process enables more efficient burning of fuel resulting in fewer emissions.

To guarantee optimum performance of the system, keep the surfaces of the charge air cooler, condenser and radiator clean and free of debris. Periodically check the hoses leading to and from the charge air cooler for cracks or loose clamps resulting in loss of pressure and reduced engine performance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hoses And Vacuum/Vapor Harnesses

Inspect surfaces of hoses and nylon tubing for evidence of heat and mechanical damage. Hard or soft spots, brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration of the rubber.

Pay particular attention to those hoses nearest to high heat sources such as the exhaust manifold. Inspect hose routing to be sure hoses do not come in contact with any heat source or moving component which may cause heat damage or mechanical wear.

Insure nylon tubing in these areas has not melted or collapsed.

Inspect all hose connections such as clamps and couplings to make sure they are secure and no leaks are present.

Components should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of wear or damage that could cause failure.

Fuel System Connections

Electronic Fuel Injection high pressure fuel systems are designed with tubes and special connects, connections and clamps which have unique material characteristics to provide adequate sealing and resist attack by deteriorated gasoline.

You are urged to use only the manufactures-specified tubes, connections and clamps, or their equivalent in material and specification, in any fuel system servicing.

Brake System

Power Disc Brakes (Front and Rear)

Disc brakes do not require adjustment; however, several hard stops during the break-in period are recommended to seat the linings and wear off any foreign material.

Brake And Power Steering Hoses

When the vehicle is serviced for scheduled maintenance, inspect surface of hoses and nylon tubing for evidence of

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

heat and mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasion, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration of the rubber. Particular attention should be made to examining those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Insure nylon tubing in these areas has not melted or collapsed.

Inspect all hose connections such as clamps and couplings to make sure they are secure and no leaks are present.

NOTE: Often, fluid such as oil, power steering fluid, and brake fluid are used during assembly plant operations to facilitate the assembly of hoses to couplings. Therefore, oil wetness at the hose-coupling area is not necessarily an indication of leakage. Actual dripping of hot fluid when systems are under pressure (during vehicle operation), should be noted before hose is replaced based on leakage.

NOTE: Inspection of brake hoses should be performed whenever the brake system is serviced and every engine oil change. Inspect hydraulic brake hoses for surface cracking, scuffing, or worn spots. If there is any evidence of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, the hose should be replaced immediately! Eventual deterioration of the hose can take place resulting in a possibility of a burst failure.

WARNING!

Worn brake hoses can burst and cause brake failure. You could have an accident. If you see any signs of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, have the brake hoses replaced immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake Master Cylinder – Brake Fluid Level Check
The fluid level of the master cylinder should be checked when performing under the hood service, or immediately if the brake system warning lamp indicates system failure.

The brake master cylinder has a translucent plastic reservoir. On the outboard side of the reservoir, there is a "MAX" mark and an "MIN" mark (3500 vehicles only) and a "FULL" and "ADD" mark (4500/5500 vehicles only). The fluid level must be kept within these two marks. Do not add fluid above the full mark because leakage may occur at the cap.

With disc brakes the fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake linings wear. However, an unexpected drop in fluid level may be caused by a leak and a system check should be conducted.

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct Fluid type.

WARNING!

Use of a brake fluid that may have a lower initial boiling point, or unidentified as to specification, may result in sudden brake failure during hard prolonged braking. You could have an accident.

WARNING!

Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts and the brake fluid catching fire.

Use only brake fluid that has been in a tightly closed container to avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CAUTION!

Do not allow a petroleum-base fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Seal damage and loss of brake performance may result.

Clutch Hydraulic System

The clutch hydraulic system is a sealed maintenance-free system. In the event of leakage or other malfunction, the system must be replaced.

Clutch Linkage

If the clutch pedal linkage begins to squeak or grunt, the clutch pedal pivot bushings should be lubricated. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type. Multipurpose Grease, NLGI Grade 2 E.P.

Rear Axle And 4x4 Front Driving Axle Fluid Level

For Models with 9.25 Front Axles and 11.5" Rear Axles refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type. For normal service, periodic fluid level checks are not required. When the vehicle is serviced for other reasons, the exterior surfaces of the axle assembly should be inspected.

When checking the fluid level (3500 only), the vehicle should be in a level position. The fluid level should be 1/4" ± 1/4" (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the front axle. The fluid level should be 1/4" ± 1/4" (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the rear axle.

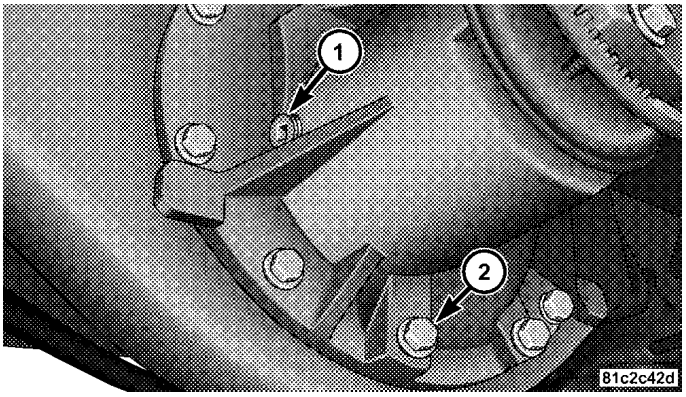
When checking the fluid level (4500/5500 only), the vehicle should be in a level position. The fluid level should be 1/4" ± 1/4" (6.4 mm ± 6.4 mm) below the fill hole on the front axle. The fluid level should be level with the bottom of the fill hole on the rear axle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Drain And Refill

On 3500 vehicles the differential cover must be removed to drain the axle fluid.

On 4500/5500 vehicles remove the lower bolt to drain the axle fluid.



1 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Fill Plug
2 — 4500/5500 Rear Axle Fluid Drain Plug

Follow the appropriate Maintenance Schedule for recommended front and rear axle fluid change intervals.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type.

NOTE: The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

Limited-Slip Differentials DO NOT REQUIRE any limited slip oil additive (friction modifiers).

NOTE: Slight noise and mild shuddering may be evident while turning a vehicle with limited slip differential on concrete or dry pavement. These conditions should be considered normal operation of the limited slip differential.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transfer Case — If Equipped

Drain And Refill

Follow the appropriate Maintenance Schedule for recommended transfer case fluid change intervals.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type.

Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. The fluid level should be to the bottom edge of the filler plug hole with the vehicle in a level position.

Manual Transmission — If Equipped

Lubricant Selection for 6-Speed Manual Transmission — If Equipped

If it becomes necessary to add fluid or change the fluid, be sure to use the same lubricant or equivalent. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type.

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended transmission fluid change intervals.

Fluid Level Check

This fluid level can be checked by removing the filler plug. If the level of the lubricant is more than 1/4" below the bottom of the filler hole while the vehicle is on level ground, enough lubricant should be added to bring the level to the bottom of the filler hole.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission (Gas Engine Only)

Selection Of Lubricant

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the prescribed level using the recommended fluid.

CAUTION!

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder. Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid will result in more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check – 545RFE Transmission

Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature 180° F (82° C). This occurs after at least 15 mi (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

Procedure For Checking Fluid Level

To properly check the automatic transmission fluid level, the following procedure must be used:

1. Operate the engine at idle speed and normal operating temperature.
2. The vehicle must be on level ground.
3. Fully apply parking brake.
4. Place the gear selector momentarily in each gear position ending with the lever in P (Park).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.

6. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that a solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill.** After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two (2) minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission below the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two cold (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70° F (21° C) (room temperature). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 180° F (21° C). Remember it is best to check the level at the normal operating temperature.

CAUTION!

Be aware that if the fluid temperature is below 50° F (10° C), it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading.

7. Check for leaks. Release the Parking Brake.

NOTE: To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make certain that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated positions, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Fluid and Filter Change

Follow the Maintenance Schedule for recommended transmission fluid and filter change intervals.

NOTE: If the transmission is disassembled for any reason, the fluid and filter should be changed.

Special Additives

The manufacturer recommends against the addition of any additives to the transmission. Exception to this policy is the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks. The use of transmission sealers should be avoided, since they may adversely affect seals.

Automatic Transmission (Diesel Engine Only)

Selection Of Lubricant

Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the prescribed level using the recommended fluid.

CAUTION!

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder. Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid will result in serious damage to the transmission. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Fluid Level Check – AS68RC Transmission

Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature 167° F (76° C). This occurs after at least 15 mi (25 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Procedure For Checking Fluid Level

To properly check the automatic transmission fluid level, the following procedure must be used:

1. The vehicle must be on level ground.

2. Operate the engine at idle speed for a minimum of 60 seconds and normal operating temperature.

3. Fully apply parking brake and press the brake pedal.

4. Place the gear selector momentarily in each gear position ending with the lever in P (Park). Make sure the engine is running at idle speed.

5. Remove the dipstick and determine if the fluid is hot or cold. Hot fluid is approximately 160° F - 175° F (70° C – 82° C), Which is the normal operating temperature after the vehicle has been driven at least 15 miles. The fluid can not be comfortably held between the finger tips. Only use the cold region on the dipstick as a rough reference when doing initial oil level set after transmission rebuild or transmission refill.

6. Wipe the dipstick clean and reinsert it until seated.

7. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that a solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add Mopar® A68SRC™ Automatic Transmission Fluid as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill. Never use any ATF other than Mopar® AS68RC™ Automatic Transmission Fluid.** After adding any quantity of oil through the dipstick tube, wait a minimum of two (2) minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission below the operating temperature, the fluid level should be

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

between the two cold (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70° F – 85° F (20° C – 30° C). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the HOT (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 160° F - 175° F (70° C – 82° C). Remember it is best to check the level at the normal operating temperature.

CAUTION!

Be aware that if the fluid temperature is below 50° F (10° C), it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading. Never use any ATF other than Mopar® AS68RC™ Automatic Transmission Fluid.

8. Check for leaks. Release the Parking Brake.

NOTE: To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make certain that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated positions, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Automatic Transmission Fluid and Filter Change

To obtain best performance and long life for automatic transmissions, the manufacturer recommends that they be given regular maintenance service by an Authorized Dodge Dealer or Service Center. It is important that the transmission fluid is maintained at the correct level, and that it be drained and refilled as specified.

It is important that proper lubricant is used in the transmission. Refer to Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for the correct lubricant type. A filter change should be made at the time of the oil change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The fluid and filter(s) should be changed as specified in the Maintenance Schedule (Section 8).

NOTE: If the transmission is disassembled for any reason, the fluid and filter should be changed, and the bands adjusted (if equipped).

Special Additives

The manufacturer recommends against the addition of any additives to the transmission. Exception to this policy is the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks. The use of transmission sealers should be avoided, since they may adversely affect seals.

Front and Rear Wheel Bearings

Front Wheel Bearings

Front wheel bearings for all Dodge Ram Trucks are sealed-for-life. They do not require greasing or seal replacement. In some instances, these bearings will "purge" excess grease and the bearing will look slightly wet. This is normal. Periodic inspection for excess play is recommended.

Rear Wheel Bearings — Manufacturer's Axles

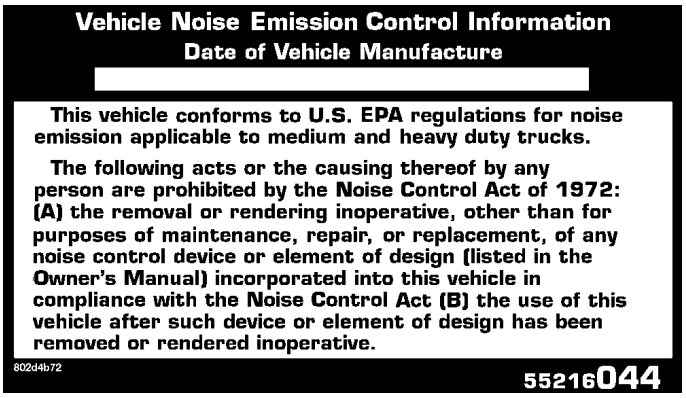
These bearings are normally considered permanently lubricated. Cleaning and repacking is required only when axle shafts are removed or in case of extreme water or dust contamination.

Noise Control System Required Maintenance & Warranty

For 3500/4500/5500 Two-Wheel Drive and Four-Wheel Drive models over 10,000 lbs. (4 535 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All vehicles built over 10,000 lbs. (4 535 kg) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and manufactured for sale and use in the United States are required to comply with the Federal Government's Exterior Noise Regulations. These vehicles can be identified by the Noise Emission Control Label located in the operator's compartment.


Vehicle Noise Emission Control Information
Date of Vehicle Manufacture
This vehicle conforms to U.S. EPA regulations for noise emission applicable to medium and heavy duty trucks.
The following acts or the causing thereof by any person are prohibited by the Noise Control Act of 1972: (A) the removal or rendering inoperative, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or replacement, of any noise control device or element of design (listed in the Owner's Manual) incorporated into this vehicle in compliance with the Noise Control Act (B) the use of this vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative.
802d4b72
55216044

Required Maintenance For Noise Control Systems

The following maintenance services must be performed every 6 months or 6,000 miles (9 600 km) whichever comes first, to assure proper operation of the noise control systems. In addition, inspection and service should be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Proper maintenance of the entire vehicle will help the effectiveness of the noise control systems.

Exhaust System

Inspect the entire exhaust system for leaks and damaged parts. Devices such as hangers, clamps, and U-bolts should be tight and in good condition. Damaged components, burned or blown out mufflers, burned or rusted out exhaust pipes should be replaced according to the procedures and specifications outlined in the appropriate service manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Cleaner Assembly

Inspect air cleaner housing for proper assembly and fit. Make certain that the air cleaner is properly positioned and that the cover is tight. Check all hoses leading to the air cleaner for tightness. The air filter element must also be clean and serviced according to the instructions outlined in the Maintenance Schedule Section of this manual.

Tampering With Noise Control System Prohibited

Federal law prohibits the following acts or the causing thereof: (1) the removal or rendering inoperative by any person, other than for purposes of maintenance, repair, or replacement, of any device or element of design incorporated into any new vehicle for the purpose of noise control prior to its sale or delivery to the ultimate purchaser or while it is in use, or (2) the use of the vehicle after such device or element of design has been removed or rendered inoperative by any person.

Among those acts presumed to constitute tampering are the acts listed below.

- **AIR CLEANER**
  - Removal of the air cleaner.
  - Removal of the air cleaner filter element from the air cleaner housing.
  - Removal of the air ducting.
- **EXHAUST SYSTEM**
  - Removal or rendering inoperative exhaust system components including the muffler or tailpipe.
- **ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM**
  - Removal or rendering inoperative the fan clutch.
  - Removal of the fan shroud.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Noise Emission Warranty

The manufacturer warrants that this vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, was designed, built and equipped to conform at the time it left the manufacturer's control with all applicable U.S. EPA Noise Control Regulations.

This warranty covers this vehicle as designed, built and equipped by the manufacturer, and is not limited to any particular part, component or system of the vehicle manufactured by the manufacturer. Defects in design, assembly or in any part, component or system of the vehicle as manufactured by the manufacturer, which, at the time it left the manufacturer's control, caused noise emissions to exceed Federal standards, are covered by this warranty for the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Noise Systems Maintenance Chart and Service Log **Maintenance Log and Service Chart (Gas Engines)** Insert Month, Day, Year under column mileage closest to the mileage at which service was performed.

MILES KILOMETERS	6,000 9 600	12,000 19 000	18,000 29 000	24,000 36 000	30,000 48 000	36,000 58 000	42,000 67 000	48,000 77 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

MILES KILOMETERS	54,000 87 000	60,000 96 000	66,000 106 000	72,000 116 000	78,000 126 000	84,000 135 000	90,000 145 000	96,000 154 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Log and Service Chart (Diesel Engines)

Noise Systems Maintenance Chart and Service Log — Insert Month, Day, Year under column mileage closest to the mileage at which service was performed.

MILES KILOMETERS	7,500 12 000	15,000 24 000	22,500 36 000	30,000 48 000	37,500 60 000	45,000 72 000	52,500 84 000	60,000 96 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

MILES KILOMETERS	67,500 108 000	75,000 120 000	82,500 132 000	90,000 144 000	97,500 126 000	84,000 156 000	105,00 168 000	112,500 181 000
Exhaust system-inspect								
Air cleaner assembly-inspect								
ODOMETER READING								
PERFORMED BY								
PERFORMED AT								

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Appearance Care and Protection from Corrosion

Protection of Body and Paint from Corrosion

Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

What Causes Corrosion?

Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using Mopar® Car Wash or a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, use Mopar® Super Kleen Bug and Tar Remover to remove.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use Mopar® Cleaner Wax to remove road film, stains and to protect your paint finish. Take care never to scratch the paint.
- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder, which will scratch metal and painted surfaces.

Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels and trunk be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to an accident or similar cause which destroys the paint and protective coating, have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use Mopar® touch up paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

Wheel and Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels should be cleaned regularly with a mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil and/or excessive brake dust, use Mopar® Wheel Cleaner (05066247AB) or equivalent or select a nonabrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, or metal polishes. Only Mopar®or equivalent is recommended. Do not use oven cleaner. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.

YES Essentials® Fabric Cleaning Procedure – If equipped

YES Essentials® seats may be cleaned in the following manner:

- Remove as much of the stain as possible by blotting with a clean, dry towel.
- Blot any remaining stain with a clean, damp towel.
- For tough stains, apply Mopar® Total Clean or a mild soap solution to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- For grease stains, apply Mopar® Multi-purpose cleaner to a clean, damp cloth and remove stain. Use a fresh, damp towel to remove soap residue.
- Do not use any solvents or protectants on Yes Essentials products.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Care

Use Mopar® Total Clean to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use Mopar® Total Clean to clean vinyl upholstery.

Mopar®Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and Mopar® Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

Cleaning Headlights

Your vehicle has plastic headlights that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other aggressive material to clean the lenses.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Glass Surfaces

All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with Mopar® Glass Cleaner or any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning the inside rear window equipped with electric defrosters or the right rear quarter window equipped with the radio antenna. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments which may scratch the elements. When cleaning the rear view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses

The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.

2. Dry with a soft tissue.

Seat Belt Maintenance

Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage can also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the car to wash them.

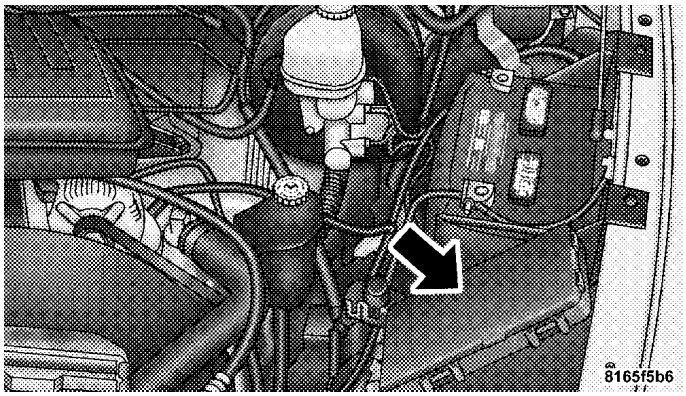
Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

Dry with a soft tissue.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUSES (INTEGRATED POWER MODULE)

An integrated Power Module is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses and mini fuses. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.



Integrated Power Module Location

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
1		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet Console
2		20 Amp Yellow	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Door Locks
3		—	—
4		15 Amp Blue	Aisin Transmission Controls (Diesel Only)
5		20 Amp Yellow	Power Sunroof
6		10 Amp Red	Vistronic Fan / Wastegate Solenoid
7		—	—
8		10 Amp Red	Heated Mirrors
9	30 Amp Pink		Off Road Module Power
10		5 Amp Orange	Trx-Off Rd Pkg Sen (Gas Engine Only) **NOTE: Insert 5 amp fuse in this cavity to enable the TRX capability (If Equipped).**
11		20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Off Draw (IOD)-Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) / Radio / Under Hood Lamp / Wireless Control Module (WCM) / Satellite Digital Audio Receiver (SDARS) / Hands Free Module (HFM) / EOM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
12	30 Amp Pink		Electric Brake
13		25 Amp Natural	Power-Battery RWAL/ABS Module Feed
14		15 Amp Blue	Park Lamps Left
15		20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Park Lamps
16		15 Amp Blue	Park Lamps Right
17		—	—
18	40 Amp Green		ABS Pump
19	30 Amp Pink		Trailer Tow Battery Feed

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
20		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints Controller (ORC) 2
21		10 Amp Red	Occupant Restraints/ Pass Disable Switch
22		2 Amp Gray	IGN Switch Feed
23		10 Amp Red	HVAC
24	20 Amp Blue		AISIN Relay Feed (Diesel Only)
25		10 Amp Red	Power Mirror/T-Case Brake
26		20 Amp Yellow	Brake Switch/Center High Mount Stop Lamp (CHMSL)/ Aftermarket CHMSL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
27	40 Amp Green		Power Seats
28		10 Amp Red	Power Run/Start-PCM/Steering Angle Sensor
29		10 Amp Red	4X4 Switch/Pass Dr Switch/EC Mirror
30		15 Amp Blue	Power Run/Start-ABS/RWAL/Smart Bar/YAW Sensor/Universal Exhaust Gas Oxygen (Uego) Sensor Controller
31		10 Amp Red	PCM (Gas)/TCM (Diesel 58RFE)

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
32		10 Amp Red	Power Ignition Run — Adjustable Pedals LED
33		10 Amp Red	Power-IGN Run — HVAC
34		—	—
35		15 Amp Blue	Cabin Compartment Node (CCN) Illumination
36		25 Amp Natural	Audio_Amplifier
37		15 Amp Blue	Variable Gate Turbo (VGT) — Turbo Diesel
38		20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlet IP

7

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Mini Fuse	Description
39		10 Amp Red	Seatbelt Tension Reducer/Power IGN Run/Acc
40		20 Amp Yellow	Power IGN Run/Acc — Cigar Lighter/Rear Power Point
41		—	—
42	30 Amp Pink		Diesel PCM (Diesel Only)

CAUTION!

- **When installing the Integrated Power Module cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the Integrated Power Module, and possibly result in a electrical system failure.**
- **When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the Ignition-Off Draw fuse (I.O.D.) fuse located in the Integrated Power Module, located in the engine compartment. The I.O.D. cavity includes a snap-in retainer that allows the fuse to be disconnected, without removing it from the fuse block.
- The electronic shift transfer case should be placed in the 4HI mode and kept in this position to minimize the battery drain.
- As an alternative to the above steps you may, disconnect the negative cables from both batteries.
- Anytime you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e. vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes in the fresh air and high blower setting. This will insure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

NOTE: When reinstalling the IOD fuse push firmly until fully seated, the gages in the Instrument Cluster will do a full sweep, when the ignition key is cycled to RUN. This is a normal condition.

NOTE: When the vehicle is shipped from the factory, the IOD fuse is in the up, or extracted position. If the radio, interior lamps, keyless entry, or other features do not work with the key off, check the position of the fuse (or check to see if the fuse is blown) to ensure that it is fully seated. When the IOD fuse is extracted, the instrument cluster, in the odometer window, will display ″NO FUSE

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REPLACEMENT LIGHT BULBS

LIGHT BULBS — Inside	Bulb No.
Overhead Console Lights	TS 212-2
Dome Light	7679

NOTE: For lighted switches, see your dealer for replacement instructions.

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

LIGHT BULBS — Exterior	Bulb No.
Back-Up	1156
Fog Lamp	9006LL
Headlamp (Halogen)	H13
Side Marker, Park & Turn Signal	1157
Rear License Plate Lamp	1157
Rear Cargo Light	912
Tail & Stop	1157

BULB REPLACEMENT

Headlight (Halogen)/Front Park and Turn Lights

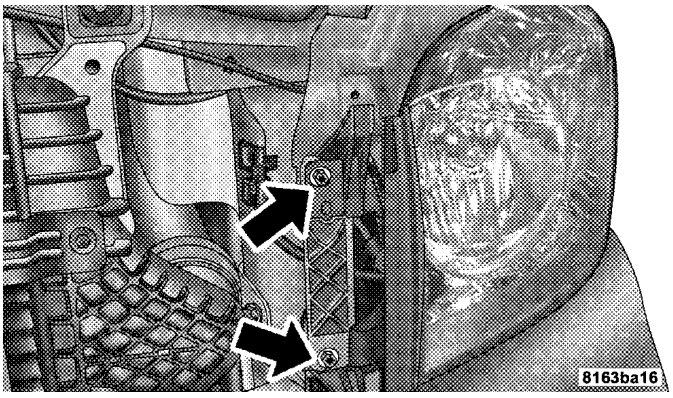
CAUTION!

This is a halogen bulb. Avoid touching the glass with your fingers. Reduced bulb life will result.

1. Open the hood

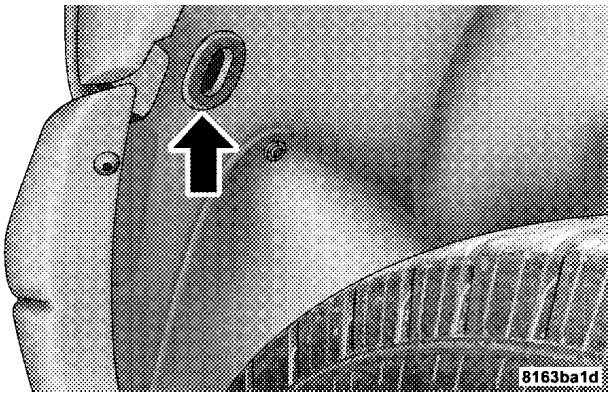
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Remove the two (2) bolts from the front of the headlight housing.



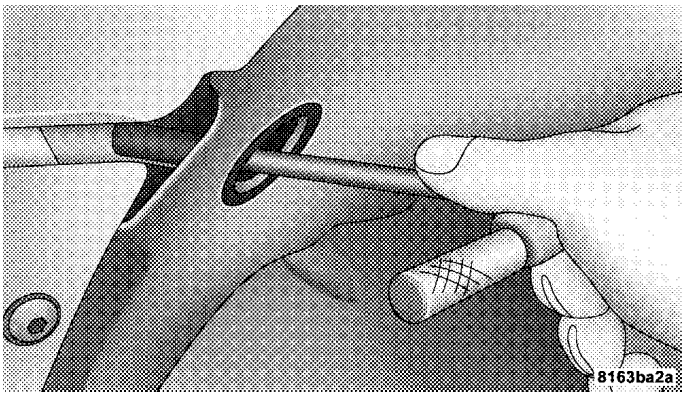
Front Headlight Housing Bolts

3. Remove the plug from the inner fender well and remove the nut through the access hole.



Inner Fender Plug

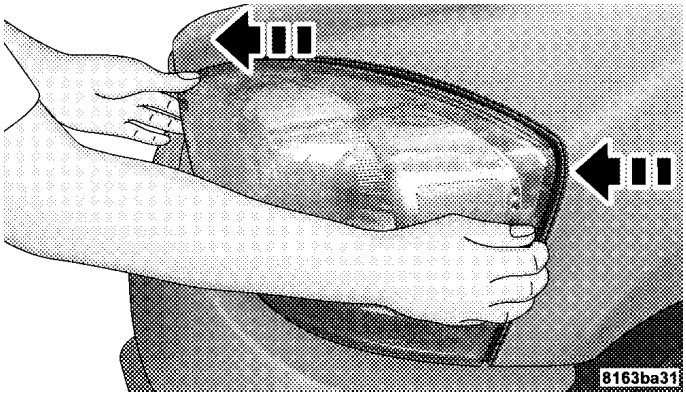
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Rear Headlight Housing Nut Access

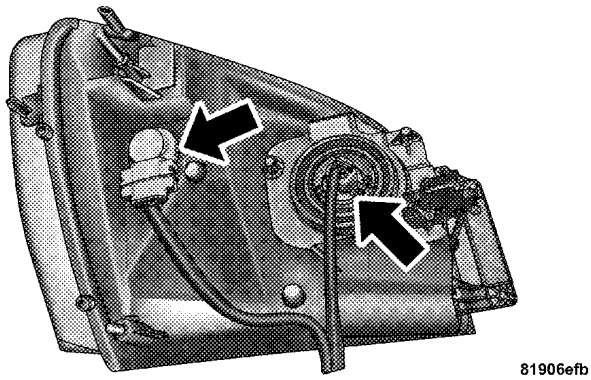
4. Pull the housing out from the fender to allow room to disconnect the electrical connectors.

NOTE: For easier removal, pull the headlight assembly straight forward, applying the greatest amount of force to the outer edge of the headlight assembly.



Headlight Removal

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Bulb Removal

5. Unlock and pull connector straight from the base of the headlight halogen bulb.

6. Twist connector on the side marker/turn signal/park light bulb ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.

7. Remove housing from vehicle with headlight halogen bulb in housing.

8. Twist the headlight halogen bulb ¼ turn and remove headlight bulb from the housing.

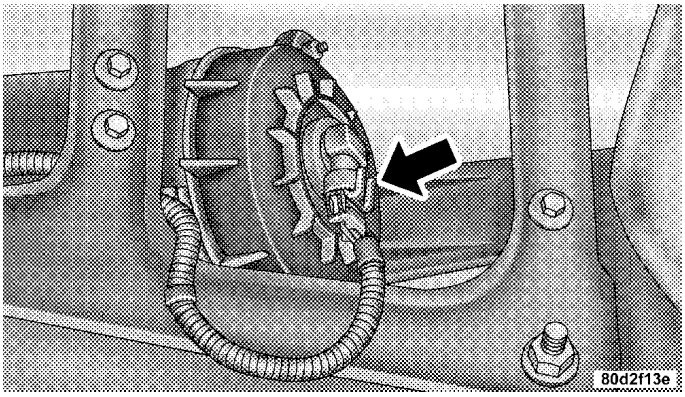
9. Replace headlight or side marker/turn signal/park light bulb. Do not touch the headlight halogen bulb.

10. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

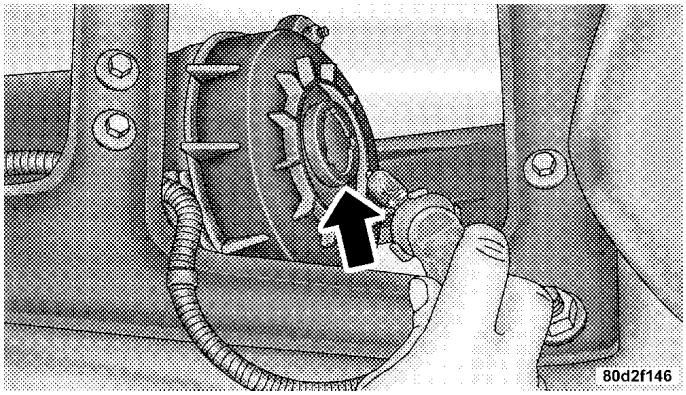
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fog Lights

1. Reach under the vehicle, unlock and twist connector counterclockwise ¼ turn and remove connector and bulb from housing.



2. Pull bulb straight from the connector.

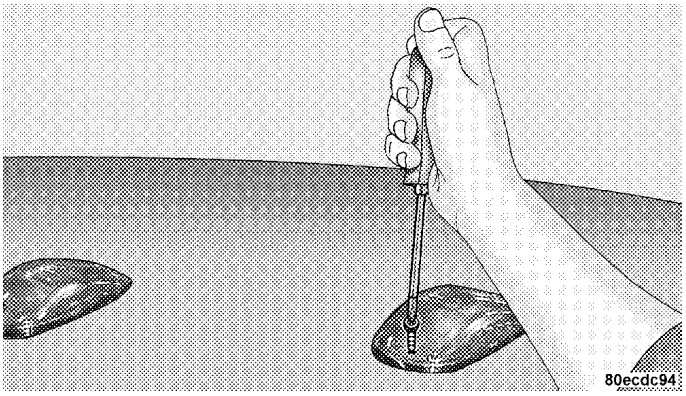


3. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

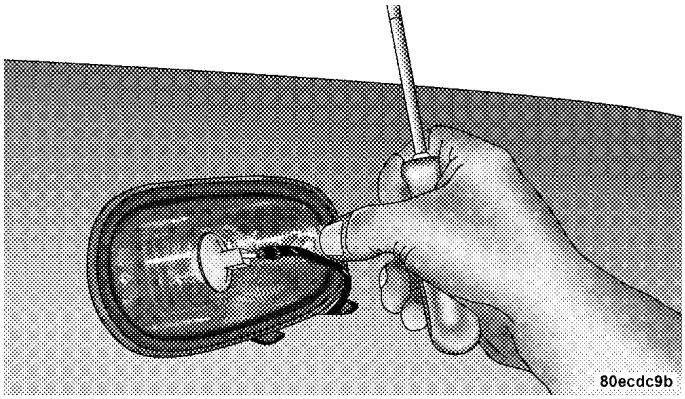
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cab Top Clearance Lights — If Equipped

1. Remove the two screws from the top of the light.

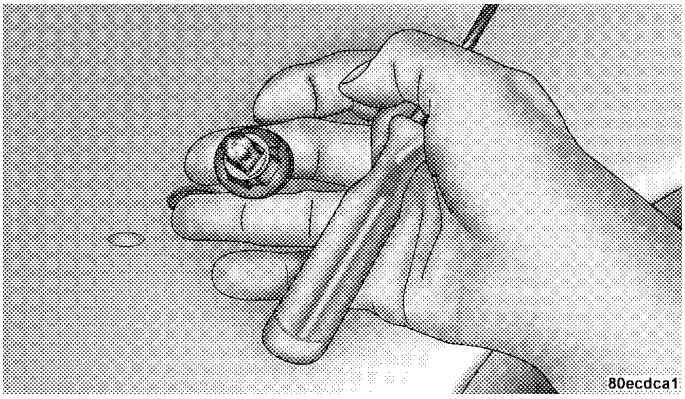


2. Rotate the socket ¼ turn and pull it from the light assembly.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Pull the bulb straight from it's socket and replace.



FLUID AND CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
Fuel (Appoximate)		
6.7L HO Turbo Diesel Engine		
Standard Rear Tank	52 gal.	197 L
Optional Midship Tank	22 gal.	83L
Fuel (Appoximate)		
5.7L Gas Engine		
Standard Rear Tank	52 gal.	197L
Optional Midship Tank	22 gal.	83L

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	U.S.	Metric
Engine Oil (with filter)		
6.7L HO Turbo Diesel Engine (SAE 15W-40, API CJ-4 Certified, that meets CES 20081 Standards.)	12 qts.	11.4L
5.7L Gas Engine V-8 (SAE 5W-30, API Certified). For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **greater** than 14,000 lbs.	7.0 qts.	6.6L
5.7L Gas Engine V-8 (SAE 5W-20, API Certified). For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **less** than 14,000 lbs.	7.0 qts.	6.6L

	U.S.	Metric
Cooling System		
6.7L Diesel Engine I-6	22.6 qts.	21.4L
5.7L Gas Engine (Mopar® Antifreeze / Coolant 5 Year / 100,000 Mile Formula) or equivalent	18.7 qts.	17.7L

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS AND GENUINE PARTS

Engine

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts
Engine Coolant	Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) or equivalent.
6.7L HO Turbo Diesel Engine Oil	Use (SAE 15W-40, API CJ-4 Certified, that meets CES 20081 Standards.)
5.7L Gas Engine Oil (For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **less** than 14,000 lbs.)	Use SAE 5W-20, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
5.7L Gas Engine Oil (For trucks operating under a gross combined weight rating **greater** than 14,000 lbs.)	Use SAE 5W-30, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
Engine Oil Filter (**5.7L Gas Engine**)	Mopar® Engine Oil Filter, P/N 5281090 or equivalent.
Engine Oil Filter (**6.7L Diesel Engine**)	Mopar® Engine Oil Filter, P/N 05083285AA or equivalent.
Engine Fuel Filter (**6.7L Diesel Engine**)	Mopar® Fuel Filter, P/N 05183410AA or equivalent. Must meet 7 micron rating. **Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturers filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts
Crankcase Ventilation Filter (**6.7L Diesel Engine**)	Mopar® CCV Filter, P/N 68001433AA or equivalent.
Fuel Selection (**5.7L Gas Engine**)	89 Octane, (R+M)/2 Method, Mid-Grade Preferred (87 Octane acceptable).
Fuel Selection (**6.7L Diesel Engine**)	Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system. For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance. If the vehicle is exposed to extreme cold (below 20°F or -7°C), or is required to operate at colder-than-normal conditions for prolonged periods, use climatized No. 2 diesel fuel or dilute the No. 2 diesel fuel with 50% No. 1 diesel fuel. This will provide better protection from fuel gelling or wax-plugging of the fuel filters. **This vehicle is fully compatible with biodiesel blends up to 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-975.**
Spark Plugs (5.7L Engine)	REC14MCC4 (Gap 0.043”)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Chassis

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts.
Automatic Transmission (5 Speed 545RFE)	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Automatic Transmission (6 Speed AS68RC)	Mopar® AS68RC™ Automatic Transmission Fluid
Transfer Case	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission Fluid G-56	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Clutch Linkage	Multipurpose Grease, NLGI Grade 2 E.P. or equivalent.
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (3500)	GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic or equivalent. **Limited slip additive is not required.**
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)	GL-5 SAE 75W-90 Synthetic (MS-9763) or equivalent.
Brake Master Cylinder	Mopar® DOT 3 and SAE J1703 should be used or equivalent.
Power Steering Reservoir	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

CONTENTS

■ Emission Control System Maintenance 480
■ Maintenance Schedules — 6.7L Turbo Diesel 480
□ Oil Change Indicator System 482
□ Maintenance Schedule 483
■ Maintenance Schedule — 5.7L Gas Engine 491
□ Required Maintenance Intervals 494

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

The "Scheduled" maintenance services, listed in **bold type** in this section (Section 8) must be done at the times or mileages specified to assure the continued proper functioning of the emission control system. These, and all other maintenance services included in this manual, should be done to provide best vehicle performance and reliability. More frequent maintenance may be needed for vehicles in severe operating conditions such as dusty areas and very short trip driving.

Inspection and service also should be done any time a malfunction is suspected.

NOTE: Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems on your vehicle may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any automotive part which has been certified pursuant to U.S. EPA or, in the State of California, California Air Resources Board regulations.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES — 6.7L TURBO DIESEL

CAUTION!

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

At Each Stop for Fuel

- Check the engine oil level about 30 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Check the windshield washer solvent and add if required. When refilling the washer fluid reservoir, take some washer fluid and apply it to a cloth or towel and wipe clean the wiper blades, this will help blade performance.

Once a Month

- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the batteries and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of coolant reservoir, transmission and transfer case (if equipped), add as needed.
- Check master cylinder reservoir fluid level for indications of brake maintenance.
- **Check Filter Minder™. Replace air cleaner filter element if necessary.**
- Check all lights and all other electrical items for correct operation.

At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Inspect the brake hoses.
- Inspect the U-Joints (if equipped) and front suspension components.
- Check the automatic transmission fluid level.
- Check the manual transmission fluid level.
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.
- Lubricate outer tie rod ends (4X4) models only.
- Lubricate Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4X4).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

Oil Change Indicator System

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. This system will alert you when it is time to change your engine oil by displaying the words "Oil Change Required" on your Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC). The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate depending on your personal driving style. Driving styles such as frequent stop and go type driving can increase the frequency of the engine oil change. This is the result of more frequent regeneration of the exhaust aftertreatment system, which can decrease the life of the engine oil. Failure to change the engine oil per the maintenance schedule can result in internal engine damage.

For information on resetting the Oil Change Indicator message, refer to "Oil Change Required – If Equipped," under "System Status (EVIC Displays)" in the "Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC)" Section of this manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Schedule

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**7,500 (12 000) [6]**	**15,000 (24 000) [12]**	**22,500 (36 000) [18]**	**30,000 (48 000) [24]**	**37,500 (60 000) [30]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4X4).	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X
Check spare tire for proper pressure and correct stowage.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate outer tie rod ends.	X	X	X	X	X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).				X	
Change front axle fluid (3500/4500/5500 4X4) (Diesel Engine only).		X		X	
Change rear axle fluid (3500 4X4 and 4X2) (Diesel Engine Only)		X		X	
Change automatic transmission fluid.				X	
Replace fuel filter element.		X		X	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	7,500 (12 000) [6]	15,000 (24 000) [12]	22,500 (36 000) [18]	30,000 (48 000) [24]	37,500 (60 000) [30]
Inspect brake linings.			X		
Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.			X		
Inspect fan hub.				X	
Inspect damper.				X	
Inspect front wheel bearings.				X	
Inspect drive belt, replace as necessary.			X		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**45,000 (72 000) [36]**	**52,500 (84 000) [42]**	**60,000 (97 000) [48]**	**67,500 (109 000) [54]**	**75,000 (121 000) [60]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4X4).	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X
Check spare tire for proper pressure and correct stowage.	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate outer tie rod ends.	X	X	X	X	X
Drain and refill transfer case fluid (4X4).			X		
Change front axle fluid (3500/4500/5500 4X4) (Diesel Engine only).	X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid (3500 4X4 and 4X2) (Diesel Engine only)	X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid (4500/5500 4X4 and 4X2).			X		
Change automatic transmission fluid.			X		
Change manual transmission fluid.			X		

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**45,000 (72 000) [36]**	**52,500 (84 000) [42]**	**60,000 (97 000) [48]**	**67,500 (109 000) [54]**	**75,000 (121 000) [60]**
Flush and replace engine coolant at 60 months, if not replaced at 100,000 miles (160 000 km).					X
Inspect drive belt, replace as necessary.	X				X
Replace fuel filter element.	X		X		X
Inspect brake linings.	X			X	
Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.	X			X	
Inspect fan hub.			X		
Inspect damper.			X		
Inspect front wheel bearings.			X		
Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).					X

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**82,500 (133 000) [66]**	**90,000 (145 000) [72]**	**97,500 (157 000) [78]**	**100,000 (160 000)**	**105,000 (169 000) [84]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X		X
Lubricate Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4X4).	X	X	X		X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X		X
Check spare tire for proper pressure and correct stowage.	X	X	X		X
Lubricate outer tie rod ends.	X	X	X		X
Flush and replace engine coolant, if not replaced at 60 mos.				X	
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).		X			
Change front axle fluid (3500/4500/5500 4X4) (Diesel Engine only).		X			X
Change rear axle fluid (3500 4X4 and 4X2) (Diesel Engine only).		X			X
Change automatic transmission fluid.		X			
Inspect drive belt, replace as required.*		X			X

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	82,500 (133 000) [66]	90,000 (145 000) [72]	97,500 (157 000) [78]	100,000 (160 000)	105,000 (169 000) [84]
Inspect fan hub.		X			
Inspect damper.		X			
Replace fuel filter element.		X			X
Inspect front wheel bearings.		X			
Inspect brake linings.		X			X
Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.		X			X

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**112,500 (181 000) [90]**	**120,000 (193 000) [96]**	**127,500 (205 000) [102]**	**135,000 (217 000) [108]**	**142,500 (229 000) [114]**	**150,000 (241 000) [120]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4X4).	X	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Check spare tire for proper pressure and correct stowage.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Lubricate outer tie rod ends.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Flush and replace engine coolant at 120 months, if not replaced at 100,000 miles (161 000 km).						X
Inspect drive belt, replace as required.*		X		X		X
Drain and refill transfer case fluid (4X4).		X				
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).						X
Change front axle fluid (3500/4500/5500 4X4) (Diesel Engine only).		X		X		X

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	112,500 (181 000) [90]	120,000 (193 000) [96]	127,500 (205 000) [102]	135,000 (217 000) [108]	142,500 (229 000) [114]	150,000 (241 000) [120]
Change rear axle fluid (3500 4X4 and 4X2) (Diesel Engine only).		X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid (4500/5500 4X4 and 4X2).		X				
Change automatic transmission fluid.		X				X
Change manual transmission fluid.		X				
Inspect fan hub.		X			X	
Inspect damper.		X			X	
Replace fuel filter element.		X		X		X
Inspect front wheel bearings.		X			X	
Inspect brake linings.	X			X		
Inspect and adjust parking brake if necessary.	X			X		
Adjust valve lash clearance.						X
Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).						X

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

*This maintenance is not required if belt was previously replaced.

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE — 5.7L GAS ENGINE

The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

The "Change Oil" message will flash in the instrument cluster odometer and a single chime will sound, indicating that an oil change is necessary.

Based on engine operation conditions the oil change indicator message will illuminate, this means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

NOTE:

- The oil change indicator message will not monitor the time since the last oil change. Change your vehicles oil if it has been 6 months since your last oil change even if the oil change indicator message is NOT illuminated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Change your engine oil more often if you drive your vehicle off-road for an extended period of time.
- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 6,000 miles (10,000 km) or 6 months, whichever comes first.

Your dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If this scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your dealer the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under "Odometer / Trip Odometer" under "Instrument Cluster Description" in Section 4 of this manual.

At Each Stop for Fuel

- Check the engine oil level about 5 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.
- Check the windshield washer solvent and add if required.

Once a Month

- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the battery and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and transmission and add as needed.
- Check all lights and other electrical items for correct operation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the brake hoses and lines.
- Check the Manual Transmission fluid level.

CAUTION!

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Required Maintenance Intervals

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.)		
	Miles	**Kilometers**	**or Months**
Change the engine oil and engine oil filter.	6,000	10 000	6
Rotate Tires.	6,000	10 000	6
Lubricate outer tie rod ends.	6,000	10 000	6
Lube Front Drive Shaft Fitting (4x4 only).	6,000	10 000	6
If using your vehicle for any of the following: Dusty or off-road conditions. Inspect the engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.	12,000	20 000	12
Inspect the brake linings, replace if necessary.	12,000	20 000	12
Inspect the front and rear axle fluid, change if using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing (Gas Engine Only).	18,000	30 000	18
Inspect the CV Joints. Perform the first inspection at 12,000 miles (20 000 km) or 12 months.	24,000	40 000	24

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.)		
	Miles	**Kilometers**	**or Months**
Inspect Exhaust System. Perform the first inspection at 12,000 miles (20 000 km) or 12 months.	24,000	40 000	24
Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals, replace if necessary.	24,000	40 000	24
Replace the engine air cleaner filter.	30,000	50 000	30
Inspect the transfer case fluid.	30,000	50 000	30
Replace the spark plugs on 5.7L engines.	30,000	50 000	30
Change the automatic transmission fluid & filter and change main sump filter and spin-on cooler return filter (if equipped), if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet or frequent trailer towing.	60,000	100 000	60
Change the transfer case fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing.	60,000	100 000	60

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Items	Perform Maintenance Every (Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.) Miles	Kilometers	or Months
Change the manual transmission fluid if using your vehicle for any of the following: trailer towing, snow-plowing, heavy loading, taxi, police, delivery service (commercial service), off-road, desert operation or more then 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90F° (32C°).	60,000	100 000	60
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.	90,000	150 000	90
Flush and replace the engine coolant.	102,000	170 000	60
Change the automatic transmission fluid & filter and change main sump filter and spin-on cooler return filter (if equipped).	120,000	200 000	120
Replace Accessory Drive Belt(s).	120,000	200 000	120

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

CONTENTS

- Suggestions For Obtaining Service For Your Vehicle 500
  - Prepare For The Appointment 500
  - Prepare A List 500
  - Be Reasonable With Requests 500
- If You Need Assistance 500
- Warranty Information (U.S. Vehicles Only) 503
- Mopar® Parts 503
- Reporting Safety Defects 503
  - In Canada 504
- Publication Order Forms 504
- Department Of Transportation Uniform Tire Quality Grades 506
  - Treadwear 506
  - Traction Grades 506
  - Temperature Grades 507

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty, discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident, or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items, and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many dealers, you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its dealers are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized Chrysler, Dodge, or Jeep dealer. We strongly recommend that you take your vehicle to your selling dealer. They know you and your vehicle best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's dealers have the facilities, factory-trained

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

technicians, special tools, and the latest information to assure your vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to your dealer's service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the dealership. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If your dealership is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the Manufacturer's Customer Center.

Any communication to the Manufacturer's Customer Center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Dealership name
- Vehicle identification number
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

DaimlerChrysler Motors Corporation Customer Center
P.O. Box 21–8004
Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004
Phone: (800) 992-1997

DaimlerChrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center
P.O. Box 1621
Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6
Phone —(800) 465–2001

In Mexico contact:
Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240
Sante Fe C.P. 05109
Mexico, D. F.
In Mexico (915) 729–1248 or 729–1240
Outside Mexico (525) 729–1248 or 729–1240

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its Customer Center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1–800–380–CHRY.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for your vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after your manufacturer's new vehicle limited warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's Service Contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's Service Contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of your vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about your service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922.

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's Service Contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's Service Contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's Service Contract, and you require service after your manufacturer's new vehicle limited warranty expires, please refer to your contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased your new vehicle. Your dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with your ownership experience. You'll be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING!

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

WARRANTY INFORMATION (U.S. Vehicles Only)

See the Warranty Information Booklet for the terms and provisions of DaimlerChrysler's warranties applicable to this vehicle.

MOPAR® PARTS

Mopar® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from your dealer. They will help you keep your vehicle operating at its best.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In the 50 United States and Washington D.C.: If you believe that your vehicle has a defect, which could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, and the manufacturer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153), or go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

In Canada:

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should write to Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls, 2780 Sheffield Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9.

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

NOTE: A street address is required when ordering manuals. (No P.O. Boxes).

- *Service Manuals.*

  These comprehensive service manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing, and repairing DaimlerChrysler Corporation vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system, and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams, and charts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- *Diagnostic Procedure Manuals.*

  Filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations, these practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and driveability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

- *Owner's Manuals.*

  These manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific Chrysler group vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Call Toll Free at:

- **1–800–890–4038 (U.S.)**
- **1–800–387–1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the World Wide Web at:

- **www.techauthority.daimlerchrysler.com**
- **www.daimlerchrysler.ca/manuals**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following describes the tire grading categories established by the National highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your car.

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements in Addition to These Grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction Grades

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Temperature Grades

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INDEX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Fuel 343,345
Adjustable Pedals 131
Air Cleaner, Engine
(Engine Air Cleaner Filter) 413,414,453
Air Conditioner Maintenance 427
Air Conditioning Refrigerant 427,428
Air Conditioning System 237,427
Air Conditioning System, Zone Control 240
Air Filter 414
Air Pressure, Tires 323,333
Airbag 47,52
Airbag Light 75,175
Airbag On/Off Switch 52
Alarm, Panic 24
Alarm (Security Alarm) 19,177
Alarm System (Security Alarm) 19
Alignment and Balance 332
Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle 8
Antenna, Satellite Radio 229
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 435,436
Capacities 474
Anti-Lock Warning Light 181,312
Anti-Theft Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) 19
Anti-Theft System 19,177
Appearance Care 457
Ashtray 152
Auto Unlock, Doors 146
Automatic Dimming Mirror 82
Automatic Door Locks 146
Automatic Transaxle 12
Interlock System 19
Automatic Transmission 273,279,446,448
Fluid and Filter Changes 448,450
Fluid Level Check 446,448,449
Fluid Type 446,448,478
Shift Indicator 177
Special Additives 448,451
Automatic Transmission (Diesel Engine Only) 446

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission (Gas Engine Only) 448
Axle Fluid 444,478
Axle Lubrication (Axle Fluid) 444

Ball Joints 429
Battery 425,426
  Blanket 265,427
  Emergency Starting 390
  Keyless Transmitter Replacement (RKE) 25
  Saving Feature (Protection) 123
Bearings 451
Belts, Drive 413
Belts, Seat 35
Body Builders Guide 7
Body Mechanism Lubrication 430
B-Pillar Location 318
Brake Fluid 478
Brake System 309,440
  Anti-Lock (ABS) 310
  Disc Brakes 440
  Fluid Check 442
  Hoses 440
  Master Cylinder 442
  Parking 308
  Warning Light 180
Bulb Replacement 468
Bulbs, Light 468

Cab Top Clearance Lights 473
Calibration, Compass 139,149
Capacities, Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 474
Capacities, Fluid 474
Caps, Filler
  Oil (Engine) 408,410
  Power Steering 428
  Radiator (Coolant Pressure) 436
Car Washes 457
Carbon Monoxide Warning 74,340

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cassette Tape and Player Maintenance 232
Catalyst Full Message 422
Catalytic Converter 420
CD (Compact Disc) Player 186,194,208
Cellular Phone 87
Center Lap Belts 44
Center Seat Storage Compartment 157,158
Certification Label 347
Charge Air Cooler 439
Chart, Tire Sizing 315
Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator Light) 179
Child Restraint 59,60
Child Restraint Tether Anchors 63,67
Child Seat 60,66
Cigar Lighter 152
Cleaning
  Wheels 459
Climate Control 234
Clock 183,188,196,209,222
Clutch Linkage Maintenance 443
Compact Disc (CD) Maintenance 233
Compass 139
Compass Calibration 139,149
Compass Variance 140,150
Computer, Trip/Travel 135
Console, Overhead 142
Contract, Service 502
Coolant Pressure Cap (Radiator Cap) 436
Cooling System 433
  Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) 436
  Coolant Capacity 474
  Coolant Level 433,434,437
  Disposal of Used Coolant 437
  Drain, Flush, and Refill 435
  Inspection 437
  Points to Remember 438
  Pressure Cap 436

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radiator Cap 436
Selection of Coolant (Antifreeze) 435,476
Temperature Gauge 176
Cruise Control (Speed Control) 132
Cup Holder 154
Customer Assistance 500

Data Recorder, Event 57
Daytime Running Lights 125
Dealer Service 403
Defroster, Rear Window 85,161
Defroster, Windshield 75,235,238
Delay (Intermittent) Wipers 128
Diesel Exhaust Brake 270
Diesel Fuel 341
Diesel Fuel Requirements 341
Bulk Storage of 346
Differential, Limited-Slip 301
Dipsticks 406
Power Steering 428
Disc Brakes 440
Disposal 412
Engine Oil 412
Used Coolant (Antifreeze) 437
Door Locks 27
Door Locks, Automatic 146
Downshifting 288
Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter 417
Drive Belts 413
Driving
Through Flowing, Rising, or Shallow Standing Water 305
Dual Rear Wheels 336,386
DVD Player (Video Entertainment System) 226

Electric Rear Window Defrost 85,161
Electrical Power Outlets 151
Electronic Speed Control (Cruise Control) 132

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electronic Vehicle Information Center (EVIC) 143
Electronically Shifted Transfer Case 294
Emergency Brake 308
Emergency, In Case of
Freeing Vehicle When Stuck 393
Hazard Warning Flasher 378
Jacking 380
Jump Starting 390
Tow Hooks 394
Towing 395
Emission Control System Maintenance 480
Emission Related Components 425
Engine 400,401
Air Cleaner 413,414
Block Heater 256,264,270
Break-In Recommendations 71
Compartment 400
Compartment Identification 401
Coolant (Antifreeze) 476
Cooling 433
Data Plate 403
Exhaust Gas Caution 340
Flooded, Starting 253
Identification 400
Idling 266
Jump Starting 390
Oil 406,476
Oil Filler Cap 408,410
Oil Selection 408
Oil Synthetic 265,410
Runaway 337
Temperature Gauge 176
Event Data Recorder 57
Exhaust Brake 270
Exhaust Gas Caution 74,340,433
Exhaust System 74,432,433,452
Exterior Lighting 124

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fabric Care 459
Fan 439
Filters
  Air Cleaner 413
  Engine Fuel 417,420,476
  Engine Oil 406,410,476
Flashers
  Turn Signal 126
Flat Tire Stowage 389
Flooded Engine Starting 253
Fluid, Brake 478
Fluid Capacities 474
Fluid Level Checks
  Brake 442
  Manual Transmission 445
  Power Steering 428
  Transfer Case 445
Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts 476
Fog Lights 125,179,472
Fold Flat Load Floor 163
Four Wheel Drive 289
Four-Way Hazard Flasher 378
Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 393
Front Axle (Differential) 430,443
Front Wheel Bearings 451
Fuel 337,341,345
  Adding 343,345
  Diesel 341,345,476
  Filter 417,420,476
  Gauge 183
  Hoses 440
  Light 183
  Octane Rating 337
  Requirements 337,341
  Specifications 342
  System Hoses 440
  Tank Capacity 474
Fuses 462

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gas Cap (Fuel Filler Cap) 344,402
Gasoline (Fuel) 337
Gasoline, Reformulated 338
Gauges 174
  Coolant Temperature 176
  Fuel 183
  Oil Pressure 176
  Speedometer 175
  Tachometer 175
  Voltmeter 174,262
Gear Ranges 274,279,287
General Information 18,113
Glass Cleaning 461
Grocery Bag Retainer 161
Gross Axle Weight Rating 352
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating 351
Guide, Body Builders 7
GVWR 348
Hands-Free Phone (UConnect™) 87
Hazard
  Driving Through Flowing, Rising, or Shallow Standing Water 305
Hazard Warning Flasher 378
Head Restraints 116
Headlights 468
  Cleaning 460
  High Beam 127
  High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch 127
  Lights On Reminder 125
  Passing 127
  Switch 124
Heated Mirrors 85,161
Heated Seats 119
Heater 237
Heater, Engine Block 270
High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch . . 127

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Hitches
Trailer Towing 355
Hoisting 389
Hood Release 120
Hoses 440
Hub Caps 385
Hydraulic Clutch Fluid 443

Ignition 12
Key 12
Ignition Key Removal 12
Illuminated Entry 20
Immobilizer (Sentry Key) 15
Infant Restraint 59,60
Inflation Pressure Tires 333
Information Center 143
Information Center, Vehicle 143
Inside Rearview Mirror 81
Instrument Cluster 172,174
Instrument Panel and Controls 171
Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning 461
Integrated Power Module (Fuses) 462
Interior Appearance Care 460
Interior Lights 122
Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers) 128
Intervention Regeneration Strategy 422
Introduction 4

Jack Location 379
Jack Operation 380
Jump Starting 390

Key, Programming 17
Key, Replacement 16
Key, Sentry (Immobilizer) 15
Keyless Entry System 21
Keys 12

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lane Change and Turn Signals 126
Lap Belts 44
Lap/Shoulder Belts 35
LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren) 63
Life of Tires 331
Lights 76,122
Airbag 56,175
Anti-Lock Warning 181,312
Brake Warning 180
Bulb Replacement 468
Cap Top Clearance 473
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 179
Cruise 183
Daytime Running 125
Dome 142
Fog 125,179,472
Four-Wheel Drive Indicator 293
Hazard Warning Flasher 378
Headlights 124
High Beam 127,175
High Beam Indicator 175
High Beam/Low Beam Select 127
Illuminated Entry 20
Instrument Cluster 174
Intensity Control 123
Interior 122
Lights On Reminder 125
Passing 127
Reading 142
Seat Belt Reminder 175
Service 468
Transfer Case 293
Transmission Warning 182
Turn Signal 126,175,468
Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) 174
Limited-Slip Differential 301,444
Loading Vehicle 347

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires 318
Locks 27
Child Protection 31
Door 27
Keys 12
Power Door 28
Steering Wheel 18
Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH) 63
Lubrication, Body 430
Lug Nuts 384,386
Lumbar Support 117

Maintenance 404
Maintenance Free Battery 425
Maintenance Procedures 406
Maintenance Schedule 480,491
Manual, Service 504
Manual Transmission 285,445
Fluid Level Check 445
Lubricant Selection 478
Shift Speeds 287
Map/Reading Lights 142
Mirrors 81
Automatic Dimming 82
Electric Powered 84
Outside 82
Rearview 81
Trailer Towing 85,364
Modifications/Alterations, Vehicle 8
Mopar Parts 403,503
Multi-Function Control Lever 126

Navigation Radio 222
Navigation System 222
New Vehicle Break-In Period 71
Noise Control
Maintenance 452

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tampering Prohibited 453
Noise Emission Warranty 451,454

Occupant Restraints 35
Octane Rating, Gasoline (Fuel) 337
Odometer 177,182
Trip 177,182
Off-Pavement Driving (Off-Road) 307
Off-Road Driving (Off-Pavement) 307
Oil Change Indicator 145,178,482
Oil, Engine 476
Capacity 474
Change Interval 407,409
Dipstick 406
Disposal 412
Filter 406,410,476
Identification Logo 408,409
Materials Added to 410
Pressure Gauge 176
Recommendation 408,409
Synthetic 410
Viscosity 408,410
Oil Filter, Change 410
Onboard Diagnostic System 402
Operating Precautions 402
Outside Rearview Mirrors 82
Overdrive 276,282
Overdrive OFF Switch 276,282
Overhead Console 135,142
Overhead Travel Information Center 135
Owner's Manual (Operator Manual) 504

Panic Alarm 24
Parking Brake 308
Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch 52
Passing Light 127
Pedals, Adjustable 131
Personal Settings 146

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Phone, Cellular 87
Phone, Hands-Free (UConnect™) 87
Placard, Tire and Loading Information 318
Positive Crankcase Valve 425
Power
  Distribution Center (Fuses) 462
  Door Locks 28
  Mirrors 84
  Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet) 151
  Seats 117
  Sliding Rear Window 34,162
  Steering 312,428
  Take-Off Adapter 302
  Take-Off Operation 302
  Windows 32
Power Steering Fluid 478
Pregnant Women and Seat Belts 47
Pretensioners
  Seat Belts 45
Programmable Electronic Features 146
PTO (Power Take-Off) 302

Radial Ply Tires 328
Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) 436
Radio Broadcast Signals 184
Radio, Navigation 222
Radio Operation 186,194,208
Radio Remote Controls 230
Radio, Satellite 222,226
Radio (Sound Systems) 186,194,208
Rear Axle (Differential) 443,444
Rear Wheel Bearings 451
Rear Window Features 161
Rear Window, Sliding 34,162
Reclining Front Seats 115
Recorder, Event Data 57
Recreational Towing 369
  Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 370,372

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) . . . 371,374
Reformulated Gasoline 338
Refrigerant 428
Reminder, Seat Belt 45
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) 21
Remote Sound System (Radio) Controls 230
Remote Starting System 26
Replacement Keys 16
Replacement Tires 331
Reporting Safety Defects 503
Resetting Oil Change Indicator 145,178
Restraint, Head 116
Restraints, Child 59,66
Restraints, Occupant 35
Rotation, Tires 335

Safety Checks Inside Vehicle 75
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle 75
Safety Defects, Reporting 503
Safety Information, Tire 313
Safety Tips 73
Satellite Radio 222,226
Satellite Radio Antenna 229
Schedule, Maintenance 491
Seat Belt Maintenance 461
Seat Belt Reminder 45
Seat Belts 35,75
  Adjustable Upper Shoulder Anchorage 43
  And Pregnant Women 47
  Child Restraint 59,71
  Extender 47
  Front Seat 35
  Pretensioners 45
  Reminder 175
Seats 114
  Adjustment 114
  Child 71
  Cleaning 459

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding Floor 163
Heated 119
Lumbar Support 117
Power 117
Reclining 115
Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) 19,177
Selection of Coolant (Antifreeze) 435,476
Sentry Key (Immobilizer) 15
Sentry Key Programming 17
Sentry Key Replacement 16
Service Assistance 500
Service Contract 502
Service Information 404
Service Manuals 504
Setting the Clock 184,188,196,209,222
Settings, Personal 146
Shifting 273
Manual Transmission 285
Transfer Case 292
Transfer Case, Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 370,372
Transfer Case, Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 371,374
Shoulder Belt Upper Anchorage 43
Shoulder Belts 35
Signals, Turn 126
Sliding Rear Window
Power 34,162
Slippery Surfaces, Driving On 304
Snow Chains (Tire Chains) 333
Snow Plow 365
Snow Tires 334
Soot Filter 422
Spare Tire 329
Spark Plugs 420,476
Speed Control (Cruise Control) 132
Speedometer 175
Starting 252,255

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission 252,256
Engine Block Heater 256,264
Engine Fails to Start 253
Manual Transmission 252,256
Remote 26
Starting Procedures 255
Starting Procedures (Diesel Engines) 255
Starting Procedures (Gas Engines) 252
Steel Carcass Ply Tires 325
Steering
Linkage 429
Power 312,428
Wheel Lock 18
Wheel, Tilt 130
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls 230
Storage, Behind the Seat 157
Storage Compartment, Center Seat 157,158
Storage, Vehicle 467
Storing Your Vehicle 467
Supplemental Tire Pressure Information 333
Synthetic Engine Oil 265,410
System, Navigation 222
System, Remote Starting 26

Tachometer 175
Tether Anchor, Child Restraint 63,67
Tilt Steering Column 130
Tip Start 253
Tire and Loading Information Placard 318,333
Tire Identification Number (TIN) 317
Tire Markings 313
Tire Safety Information 313
Tires 75,322,506
Aging (Life of Tires) 331
Air Pressure 322
Alignment 332
Chains 333

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing 380
Dual 336,386
General Information 322
High Speed 327
Inflation Pressures 323
Jacking 380
Life of Tires 331
Load Capacity 318,319
Quality Grading 506
Radial 328
Replacement 331
Rotation 335
Safety 313,322
Sizes 315
Snow Tires 334
Spinning 329
Steel Carcass Ply 325
Tread Wear Indicators 330
Wheel Mounting 380
Wheel Nut Torque 384
Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight 356
Torque Converter Clutch 278,285
Tow Hooks, Emergency 394
Towing 351
Disabled Vehicle 395
Guide 356
Recreational 369
Weight 356
Traction 304
Traction Control 445
Trailer Towing 351
Cooling System Tips 363
Hitches 355
Minimum Requirements 357
Mirrors 85,364
Trailer and Tongue Weight 356
Wiring 360
Trailer Towing Guide 356

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trailer Weight 356
Transaxle
Automatic 12
Manual 14
Transfer Case
Electronically Shifted 294
Fluid 478
Transmission
Automatic 273,279,446,448
Fluid 478
Maintenance 446,448
Manual 252,256,285,445
Shifting 273
Transmitter Battery Service (Remote Keyless Entry) 25
Tread Wear Indicators 330
Trip Computer 135
Trip Odometer 177,182
Turn Signals 126,175,468
UConnect™ (Hands-Free Phone) 87
Underhood Fuses 462
Uniform Tire Quality Grades 506

Variance, Compass 140,150
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 8
Vehicle Information Center 143
Vehicle Loading 319,347
Vehicle Modifications/Alterations 8
Vehicle Storage 467
Video Entertainment System (Rear Seat Video System) 226
Viscosity, Engine Oil 410
Voltmeter 174,262

Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Description) 174
Warnings and Cautions 7
Warranty Information 503

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Washers, Windshield 129,431
Washing Vehicle 457
Water
  Driving Through 305
Water Separator, Diesel Fuel 417
Wheel Alignment and Balance 332
Wheel and Wheel Trim 459
Wheel and Wheel Trim Care 459
Wheel Changing 380
Wheel Cover 385
Wheel Mounting 380
Wheel Nut Torque 384,388
Wind Buffeting 34
Window Fogging 244
Windows 32
  Power 32
  Rear Sliding 34,162
Windshield Defroster 235,238
Windshield Washers 128,129,431
  Fluid 128,431
Windshield Wiper Blades 431
Windshield Wipers 128
Wiper Blade Replacement 431
Wipers, Intermittent 128

YES Essentials® Fabric Cleaning Procedure 459

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine